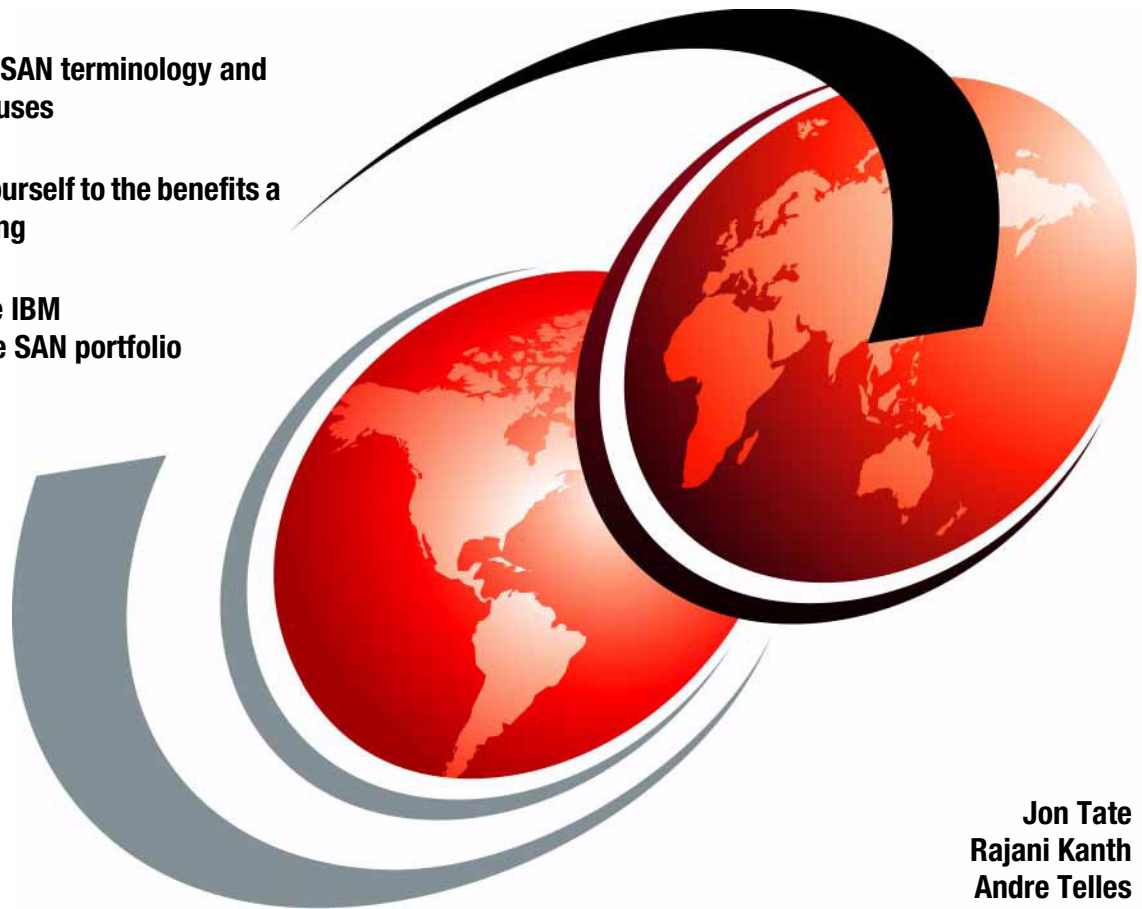


# Introduction to Storage Area Networks

Learn basic SAN terminology and component uses

Introduce yourself to the benefits a SAN can bring

Discover the IBM TotalStorage SAN portfolio



Jon Tate  
Rajani Kanth  
Andre Telles





International Technical Support Organization

**Introduction to Storage Area Networks**

April 2005

**Note:** Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page xv.

**Third Edition (May 2005)**

This edition applies to the IBM TotalStorage portfolio.

**© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1999, 2003, 2005. All rights reserved.**  
Note to U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights -- Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP  
Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

# Contents

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>Figures</b> .....  | xi    |
| <b>Tables</b> .....   | xiii  |
| <b>Notices</b> .....  | xv    |
| Trademarks .....  | xvi   |
| <b>Preface</b> .....  | xvii  |
| The team that wrote this redbook .....                        | xviii |
| Become a published author .....                               | xx    |
| Comments welcome .....  | xx    |
| <b>Chapter 1. Introduction to storage area networks</b> ..... | 1     |
| 1.1 The need for a SAN .....                                  | 3     |
| 1.1.1 Infrastructure simplification .....                     | 4     |
| 1.1.2 Information lifecycle management .....                  | 5     |
| 1.1.3 Business continuance .....                              | 5     |
| 1.2 The storage area network .....                            | 5     |
| 1.3 Storage device connectivity .....                         | 7     |
| 1.3.1 Server-attached storage .....                           | 8     |
| 1.3.2 Fibre Channel .....                                     | 8     |
| 1.3.3 FICON® .....  | 8     |
| 1.3.4 SCSI .....  | 9     |
| 1.3.5 Ethernet interface .....                                | 9     |
| 1.3.6 Network Attached Storage .....                          | 9     |
| 1.3.7 iSCSI .....   | 9     |
| 1.3.8 iFCP .....  | 10    |
| 1.3.9 FCIP .....  | 10    |
| 1.4 SAN definition and evolution .....                        | 11    |
| 1.4.1 Fibre Channel architecture .....                        | 12    |
| 1.5 SAN components .....                                      | 16    |
| 1.5.1 SAN servers .....                                       | 16    |
| 1.5.2 SAN storage .....                                       | 16    |
| 1.5.3 SAN interconnects .....                                 | 17    |
| 1.6 Storage technology trends driving SAN solutions .....     | 17    |
| 1.6.1 Today's SAN requirements .....                          | 18    |
| 1.6.2 SAN standards .....                                     | 19    |
| 1.6.3 SANs and storage virtualization .....                   | 20    |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| <b>Chapter 2. SAN servers and storage</b> .....                             | 23 |
| 2.1 Servers and storage environments .....                                  | 25 |
| 2.1.1 The challenge .....   | 25 |
| 2.2 Server environments .....   | 27 |
| 2.2.1 zSeries servers .....   | 28 |
| 2.2.2 pSeries servers .....   | 29 |
| 2.2.3 iSeries™ servers .....  | 30 |
| 2.2.4 xSeries servers .....   | 31 |
| 2.3 IBM storage products .....  | 32 |
| 2.4 IBM TotalStorage DS Family .....  | 32 |
| 2.4.1 Entry-level disk systems .....  | 32 |
| 2.4.2 Mid-range disk systems .....  | 35 |
| 2.4.3 Enterprise disk systems .....   | 41 |
| 2.5 IBM Tape Storage Systems .....  | 46 |
| 2.5.1 IBM Tape autoloaders .....  | 46 |
| 2.5.2 Tape drives .....   | 51 |
| 2.6 Storage virtualization in the SAN .....                                 | 60 |
| 2.6.1 Block virtualization at the LUN level .....                           | 61 |
| Levels of storage virtualization .....                                      | 61 |
| 2.6.2 Server, fabric, storage subsystem or file system virtualization ..... | 62 |
| 2.6.3 Virtualization models .....   | 63 |
| 2.6.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller .....                          | 64 |
| 2.6.5 IBM TotalStorage SAN File System .....                                | 66 |
| 2.7 Network Attached Storage .....  | 67 |
| <br>  |    |
| <b>Chapter 3. SAN fabrics and connectivity</b> .....                        | 71 |
| 3.1 The SAN environment .....   | 73 |
| 3.1.1 The storage area network .....  | 73 |
| 3.2 Fibre Channel topologies .....  | 74 |
| 3.2.1 Point-to-point .....  | 75 |
| 3.2.2 Arbitrated loop .....   | 76 |
| 3.2.3 Switched fabric .....   | 77 |
| 3.3 Fibre Channel technology components .....                               | 78 |
| 3.3.1 Fibre Channel transmission rates .....                                | 79 |
| 3.3.2 SerDes .....  | 79 |
| 3.3.3 Backplane and blades .....  | 79 |
| 3.4 Fibre Channel interconnects .....                                       | 79 |
| 3.4.1 Ten Gigabit small Form-factor Pluggable .....                         | 80 |
| 3.4.2 Small Form Factor Pluggable Media .....                               | 80 |
| 3.4.3 Gigabit Interface Converters .....                                    | 81 |
| 3.4.4 Gigabit Link Modules .....  | 82 |
| 3.4.5 Media Interface Adapters .....  | 83 |
| 3.4.6 1x9 Transceivers .....  | 84 |

|        |  |     |
|--------|--|-----|
| 3.4.7  | Cables                                 | 84  |
| 3.4.8  | Host bus adapters                      | 86  |
| 3.4.9  | Inter-switch links                     | 87  |
| 3.4.10 | Cascading                              | 87  |
| 3.4.11 | Latency                                | 88  |
| 3.4.12 | Trunking                               | 88  |
| 3.4.13 | Frame filtering                        | 90  |
| 3.4.14 | Oversubscription                       | 90  |
| 3.4.15 | Congestion                             | 90  |
| 3.5    | Fibre Channel devices                  | 90  |
| 3.5.1  | Bridges and gateways                   | 91  |
| 3.5.2  | Arbitrated loop hubs                   | 91  |
| 3.5.3  | Switched hubs                          | 91  |
| 3.5.4  | Switches and directors                 | 92  |
| 3.5.5  | Routers                                | 92  |
| 3.5.6  | Service modules                        | 92  |
| 3.5.7  | Storage considered as legacy           | 93  |
| 3.6    | Fibre Channel features and terminology | 93  |
| 3.6.1  | Blocking                               | 93  |
| 3.6.2  | Port types                             | 93  |
| 3.6.3  | Domain ID                              | 95  |
| 3.6.4  | Class of service                       | 95  |
| 3.6.5  | Class 1                                | 95  |
| 3.6.6  | Class 2                                | 96  |
| 3.6.7  | Class 3                                | 96  |
| 3.6.8  | Class 4                                | 96  |
| 3.6.9  | Class 5                                | 96  |
| 3.6.10 | Class 6                                | 97  |
| 3.6.11 | Class F                                | 97  |
| 3.6.12 | Buffers                                | 97  |
| 3.7    | Addressing                             | 97  |
| 3.7.1  | World Wide Name                        | 98  |
| 3.7.2  | WWN and WWPN                           | 98  |
| 3.7.3  | Port address                           | 98  |
| 3.7.4  | 24-bit port address                    | 99  |
| 3.7.5  | Loop address                           | 99  |
| 3.7.6  | FICON addressing                       | 100 |
| 3.8    | Fabric services                        | 101 |
| 3.8.1  | Management services                    | 101 |
| 3.8.2  | Time services                          | 101 |
| 3.8.3  | Name services                          | 101 |
| 3.8.4  | Login services                         | 101 |
| 3.8.5  | Registered State Change Notification   | 102 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 3.9 Logins . . . . .   | 102        |
| 3.9.1 Fabric login . . . . .                                     | 102        |
| 3.9.2 Port login . . . . .                                       | 103        |
| 3.9.3 Process login . . . . .                                    | 103        |
| 3.10 Path routing mechanisms . . . . .                           | 103        |
| 3.10.1 Spanning tree . . . . .                                   | 103        |
| 3.10.2 Fabric Shortest Path First . . . . .                      | 104        |
| 3.10.3 Layers . . . . .  | 105        |
| 3.11 Zoning . . . . .  | 106        |
| 3.11.1 Hardware zoning . . . . .                                 | 107        |
| 3.11.2 Software zoning . . . . .                                 | 108        |
| 3.12 The movement of data . . . . .                              | 109        |
| 3.12.1 Data encoding . . . . .                                   | 110        |
| 3.13 Ordered set, frames, sequences, and exchanges . . . . .     | 113        |
| 3.13.1 Ordered set . . . . .                                     | 114        |
| 3.13.2 Frames . . . . .  | 114        |
| 3.13.3 Sequences . . . . .                                       | 114        |
| 3.13.4 Exchanges . . . . .                                       | 114        |
| 3.13.5 In order and out of order . . . . .                       | 115        |
| 3.13.6 Latency . . . . .   | 115        |
| 3.13.7 Open Fibre Control: OFC or non-OFC . . . . .              | 115        |
| 3.14 Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop . . . . .                     | 116        |
| 3.14.1 Loop protocols . . . . .                                  | 116        |
| 3.14.2 Fairness algorithm . . . . .                              | 116        |
| 3.14.3 Loop addressing . . . . .                                 | 116        |
| 3.15 Emerging technologies . . . . .                             | 117        |
| 3.15.1 iSCSI . . . . .   | 118        |
| 3.15.2 iFCP . . . . .  | 118        |
| 3.15.3 FCIP . . . . .  | 118        |
| <b>Chapter 4. The IBM TotalStorage SAN Portfolio . . . . .</b>   | <b>121</b> |
| 4.1 Why an IBM TotalStorage SAN . . . . .                        | 122        |
| 4.2 Entry SAN switches . . . . .                                 | 122        |
| 4.2.1 IBM TotalStorage Switch L10 . . . . .                      | 122        |
| 4.2.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H08 . . . . .                  | 123        |
| 4.2.3 IBM TotalStorage SAN12M-1 . . . . .                        | 125        |
| 4.3 Midrange SAN switches . . . . .                              | 126        |
| 4.3.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H16 . . . . .                  | 126        |
| 4.3.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch F32 . . . . .                  | 128        |
| 4.3.3 IBM TotalStorage SAN32B-2 fabric switch . . . . .          | 129        |
| 4.3.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN24M-1 . . . . .                        | 130        |
| 4.3.5 IBM TotalStorage SAN32M-1 . . . . .                        | 131        |
| 4.3.6 Cisco MDS 9120 and 9140 Multilayer Fabric Switch . . . . . | 132        |



|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 4.3.7 Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Multilayer Fabric Switch . . . . .      | 133        |
| 4.4 Enterprise SAN directors . . . . .                                  | 135        |
| 4.4.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN Director M14 . . . . .                       | 135        |
| 4.4.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN140M . . . . .                                | 138        |
| 4.4.3 IBM TotalStorage SANC40M . . . . .                                | 140        |
| 4.4.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN256M . . . . .                                | 141        |
| 4.4.5 Cisco MDS 9506 Multilayer Director . . . . .                      | 142        |
| 4.4.6 Cisco MDS 9509 Multilayer Director . . . . .                      | 144        |
| 4.4.7 IBM TotalStorage SAN n-type directors . . . . .                   | 145        |
| 4.5 Multiprotocol routers . . . . .                                     | 150        |
| 4.5.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN 16B-R multiprotocol router . . . . .         | 151        |
| 4.5.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN16M-R multiprotocol SAN router . . . . .      | 152        |
| <b>Chapter 5. SAN management . . . . .</b>                              | <b>153</b> |
| 5.1 Standards-based management initiatives . . . . .                    | 154        |
| 5.1.1 The Storage Management Initiative . . . . .                       | 154        |
| 5.1.2 Open storage management with CIM . . . . .                        | 155        |
| 5.1.3 CIM Object Manager . . . . .                                      | 155        |
| 5.1.4 Simple Network Management Protocol . . . . .                      | 157        |
| 5.1.5 Application Program Interface . . . . .                           | 158        |
| 5.1.6 In-band management . . . . .                                      | 158        |
| 5.1.7 Out-of-band management . . . . .                                  | 159        |
| 5.1.8 Service Location Protocol . . . . .                               | 160        |
| 5.1.9 Tivoli Common Agent Services . . . . .                            | 161        |
| 5.2 SAN management features . . . . .                                   | 162        |
| 5.3 SAN management levels . . . . .                                     | 162        |
| 5.3.1 SAN storage level . . . . .                                       | 163        |
| 5.3.2 SAN network level . . . . .                                       | 166        |
| 5.3.3 Enterprise systems level . . . . .                                | 166        |
| 5.4 SAN management applications . . . . .                               | 166        |
| 5.4.1 IBM TotalStorage b-type family . . . . .                          | 167        |
| 5.4.2 Cisco . . . . .   | 167        |
| 5.4.3 IBM TotalStorage n-type family . . . . .                          | 168        |
| 5.4.4 IBM TotalStorage e-type family . . . . .                          | 168        |
| 5.4.5 IBM TotalStorage m-type family . . . . .                          | 169        |
| 5.5 SAN multithreading software . . . . .                               | 169        |
| 5.6 SAN fault isolation and troubleshooting . . . . .                   | 172        |
| 5.6.1 Problem determination and problem source identification . . . . . | 172        |
| <b>Chapter 6. SAN security . . . . .</b>                                | <b>175</b> |
| 6.1 Fibre Channel security . . . . .                                    | 177        |
| 6.2 Security mechanisms . . . . .                                       | 177        |
| 6.2.1 Encryption . . . . .  | 178        |

|   |  |            |
|---|--|------------|
| 6.2.2   | Authorization database                                       | 181        |
| 6.2.3   | Authentication database                                      | 181        |
| 6.2.4   | Authentication mechanisms                                    | 181        |
| 6.2.5   | Accountability   | 182        |
| 6.2.6   | Zoning   | 182        |
| 6.2.7   | Isolating the fabric   | 182        |
| 6.2.8   | LUN masking  | 182        |
| 6.2.9   | Fibre Channel Authentication Protocol                        | 183        |
| 6.2.10  | Persistent binding   | 183        |
| 6.2.11  | Port binding   | 183        |
| 6.2.12  | Port type controls   | 184        |
| 6.3   | IP security  | 184        |
| 6.4   | Best practices   | 185        |
| <b>Chapter 7. SAN exploitation and solutions</b>  |  | <b>187</b> |
| 7.1   | The SAN toolbox  | 188        |
| 7.2   | Strategic storage imperatives                                | 189        |
| 7.2.1   | Infrastructure simplification                                | 189        |
| 7.2.2   | Business continuity  | 190        |
| 7.2.3   | Information lifecycle management                             | 190        |
| 7.3   | Connectivity   | 191        |
| 7.4   | Consolidation solutions                                      | 191        |
| 7.4.1   | Adding capacity  | 192        |
| 7.4.2   | Disk pooling   | 192        |
| 7.4.3   | Tape pooling   | 193        |
| 7.4.4   | Server clustering  | 194        |
| 7.4.5   | SAN island consolidation                                     | 196        |
| 7.5   | Pooling solutions, storage, and data sharing                 | 198        |
| 7.5.1   | From storage partitioning to data sharing                    | 198        |
| 7.6   | Data movement solutions                                      | 203        |
| 7.6.1   | Copy services  | 204        |
| 7.7   | Business continuance solutions                               | 204        |
| 7.7.1   | LAN-free data movement                                       | 205        |
| 7.7.2   | Server-free data movement                                    | 207        |
| 7.7.3   | Disaster backup and recovery                                 | 209        |
| <b>Chapter 8. SAN standards and organizations</b> |  | <b>211</b> |
| 8.1   | SAN industry associations and organizations                  | 212        |
| 8.1.1   | Storage Networking Industry Association                      | 212        |
| 8.1.2   | Fibre Channel Industry Association                           | 213        |
| 8.1.3   | SCSI Trade Association                                       | 213        |
| 8.1.4   | International Committee for Information Technology Standards | 214        |
| 8.1.5   | INCITS Technical Committee T11                               | 214        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 8.1.6 Information Storage Industry Consortium . . . . .           | 214        |
| 8.1.7 Internet Engineering Task Force . . . . .                   | 215        |
| 8.1.8 American National Standards Institute . . . . .             | 215        |
| 8.1.9 Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers . . . . . | 215        |
| 8.1.10 Distributed Management Task Force . . . . .                | 216        |
| <b>Glossary</b> . . . . .   | <b>217</b> |
| <b>Related publications</b> . . . . .                             | <b>241</b> |
| IBM Redbooks . . . . .  | 241        |
| Referenced Web sites . . . . .                                    | 242        |
| How to get IBM Redbooks . . . . .                                 | 243        |
| Help from IBM . . . . .   | 243        |
| <b>Index</b> . . . . .  | <b>245</b> |



# Figures

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 1-1  | A SAN   | 6   |
| 1-2  | Upper and physical layers                     | 13  |
| 1-3  | SAN components                                | 16  |
| 2-1  | The evolution of storage architecture         | 24  |
| 2-2  | Disk and tape storage consolidation           | 26  |
| 2-3  | Hardware and operating systems differences    | 27  |
| 2-4  | Processor-to-storage interface connections    | 28  |
| 2-5  | pSeries processor-to-storage interconnections | 29  |
| 2-6  | iSeries hardware design                       | 30  |
| 2-7  | OS/400 versus NT or UNIX storage addressing   | 31  |
| 3-1  | High-level view of a fabric                   | 72  |
| 3-2  | The SAN                                       | 74  |
| 3-3  | Point-to-point                                | 76  |
| 3-4  | Arbitrated loop                               | 77  |
| 3-5  | Sample switched fabric configuration          | 78  |
| 3-6  | SFP   | 81  |
| 3-7  | GBIC  | 82  |
| 3-8  | GLM   | 83  |
| 3-9  | MIA   | 83  |
| 3-10 | Cable types                                   | 85  |
| 3-11 | HBA   | 86  |
| 3-12 | Trunking                                      | 89  |
| 3-13 | Fibre Channel port types                      | 95  |
| 3-14 | FC layers                                     | 105 |
| 3-15 | Zoning based on the switch port number        | 107 |
| 3-16 | Zoning based on the device's WWN              | 109 |
| 3-17 | 8b/10b encoding logic                         | 111 |
| 4-1  | L10   | 123 |
| 4-2  | H08   | 124 |
| 4-3  | SAN12M-1                                      | 125 |
| 4-4  | H16   | 127 |
| 4-5  | F32   | 128 |
| 4-6  | SAN32B-2                                      | 129 |
| 4-7  | SAN24M-1                                      | 130 |
| 4-8  | SAN32M-1                                      | 131 |
| 4-9  | 9120  | 132 |
| 4-10 | 9140  | 132 |
| 4-11 | 9216i   | 133 |

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 4-12 | 9216A   | 134 |
| 4-13 | M14   | 136 |
| 4-14 | SAN140M   | 139 |
| 4-15 | SAN256M   | 141 |
| 4-16 | 9506  | 143 |
| 4-17 | 9509  | 144 |
| 4-18 | N16   | 145 |
| 4-19 | CNT FC/9000-256 Fibre Channel Director            | 147 |
| 4-20 | CNT FC/9000-128 Fibre Channel Director            | 148 |
| 4-21 | CNT FC/9000-64 Fibre Channel Director             | 149 |
| 4-22 | CNT Ultranet Replication Appliance                | 150 |
| 4-23 | SAN16B-R  | 151 |
| 4-24 | SAN16M-R  | 152 |
| 5-1  | CIMOM component structure                         | 157 |
| 5-2  | SAN management levels                             | 163 |
| 5-3  | Core-edge SAN environment                         | 170 |
| 5-4  | Core-edge SAN environment details                 | 171 |
| 7-1  | SAN toolbox                                       | 188 |
| 7-2  | Disk pooling                                      | 193 |
| 7-3  | Tape pooling                                      | 194 |
| 7-4  | Server clustering                                 | 196 |
| 7-5  | SAN island consolidation                          | 197 |
| 7-6  | Logical volume partitioning                       | 199 |
| 7-7  | File pooling                                      | 200 |
| 7-8  | Homogeneous data sharing                          | 202 |
| 7-9  | Heterogeneous data sharing                        | 203 |
| 7-10 | LAN-less backup and recovery                      | 206 |
| 7-11 | Server-free data movement for backup and recovery | 207 |
| 7-12 | Server-free data movement for tape reclamation    | 208 |
| 7-13 | Disaster backup and recovery                      | 209 |

# Tables

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 2-1  | IBM TotalStorage DS300 description . . . . .                  | 33  |
| 2-2  | IBM TotalStorage DS400 description . . . . .                  | 34  |
| 2-3  | IBM TotalStorage DS4100 description . . . . .                 | 36  |
| 2-4  | IBM TotalStorage DS4300 description . . . . .                 | 38  |
| 2-5  | IBM TotalStorage DS4400 description . . . . .                 | 39  |
| 2-6  | IBM TotalStorage DS4500 description . . . . .                 | 40  |
| 2-7  | IBM TotalStorage DS6000 description . . . . .                 | 42  |
| 2-8  | IBM TotalStorage DS8000 description . . . . .                 | 43  |
| 2-9  | IBM TotalStorage ESS800 and ESS750 descriptions . . . . .     | 45  |
| 2-10 | 3581 Tape Autoloader description . . . . .                    | 47  |
| 2-11 | 3582 Tape Library description . . . . .                       | 48  |
| 2-12 | 3583 Tape Library description . . . . .                       | 49  |
| 2-13 | 7212 Storage Device Enclosure description . . . . .           | 50  |
| 2-14 | 3583 Tape Library description . . . . .                       | 51  |
| 2-15 | 3592 Tape Drive description . . . . .                         | 52  |
| 2-16 | 3590 1/2" Tape Drive description . . . . .                    | 53  |
| 2-17 | 3580 Tape Drive description . . . . .                         | 54  |
| 2-18 | 7205 External SDLT Tape Drive Model 550 description . . . . . | 55  |
| 2-19 | 7206 External Tape Drive description . . . . .                | 55  |
| 2-20 | 7207 External Tape Drive description . . . . .                | 56  |
| 2-21 | 7208 Model 345 External 8mm Tape Drive description . . . . .  | 58  |
| 2-22 | 3494-VTS description . . . . .                                | 59  |
| 2-23 | TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500 description . . . . .            | 69  |
| 3-1  | 10-bit encodings of K28.5 . . . . .                           | 113 |





# Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:  
*IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.*

*The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.* INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.


This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

## COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrates programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to IBM's application programming interfaces.

# Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

|                            |   |                 |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------|
| AFS®                       | Illustra™   | S/360™          |
| AIX 5L™                    | Informix®   | S/370™          |
| AIX®                       | iSeries™  | S/390®          |
| AS/400®                    | Lotus®  | Sequent®        |
| BladeCenter™               | MVS™  | Storage Tank™   |
| DB2®                       | Netfinity®  | System/36™      |
| Enterprise Storage Server® | OS/390®   | System/360™     |
| Enterprise Systems         | OS/400®   | System/370™     |
| Architecture/390®          | Parallel Sysplex®   | SANergy®        |
| ECKD™                      | Perform™  | ThinkPad®       |
| ESCON®                     | POWER™  | Tivoli®         |
| @server®                   | POWER4™   | TotalStorage®   |
| @server®                   | POWER4+™  | VM/ESA®         |
| FlashCopy®                 | POWER5™   | VSE/ESA™        |
| FICON®                     | PR/SM™  | Wave®           |
| GDPS®                      | pSeries®  | xSeries®        |
| HACMP™                     | Redbooks™   | z/Architecture™ |
| i5/OS™                     | Redbooks (logo)  ™ | z/OS®           |
| IBM®                       | RMF™  | z/VM®           |
| ibm.com®                   | RS/6000®  | zSeries®        |

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel, Intel Inside (logos), MMX, and Pentium are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

# Preface

The plethora of data created by the businesses of today is making storage a strategic investment priority for companies of all sizes. As storage takes precedence, three major initiatives have emerged:

- ▶ Infrastructure simplification: Consolidation, virtualization, and automated management with IBM® TotalStorage® can help simplify the infrastructure and ensure that an organization meets its business goals.
- ▶ Information lifecycle management: Managing business data through its lifecycle from conception until disposal in a manner that optimizes storage and access at the lowest cost.
- ▶ Business continuity: Maintaining access to data at all times, protecting critical business assets, and aligning recovery costs based on business risk and information value.

Storage is no longer an afterthought. Too much is at stake. Companies are searching for more ways to efficiently manage expanding volumes of data, and how to make that data accessible throughout the enterprise; this is propelling the move of storage into the network. Also, the increasing complexity of managing large numbers of storage devices and vast amounts of data is driving greater business value into software and services.

With current estimates of the amount of data to be managed and made available increasing at 60 percent per annum, this is where a storage area network (SAN) enters the arena. Simply put, SANs are the leading storage infrastructure for the global economy of today. SANs offer simplified storage management, scalability, flexibility, availability, and improved data access, movement, and backup.

This IBM Redbook gives an introduction to the SAN. It illustrates where SANs are today, who are the main industry organizations and standard bodies active in the SAN world, and it positions IBM's comprehensive, best-of-breed approach of enabling SANs with its products and services. It introduces some of the most commonly encountered terminology and features present in a SAN.

For further reading, and a deeper dive into the SAN world, readers may find the following redbook especially useful to expand their SAN knowledge:

- ▶ *IBM TotalStorage: SAN Product, Design, and Optimization Guide*, SG24-6384

## The team that wrote this redbook

This redbook was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center.

Figure 1 shows the authors of this redbook.



*Figure 1 Left to right: Andre, Rajani, and Jon*

**Jon Tate** is a Project Manager for IBM TotalStorage SAN Solutions at the International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center. Before joining the ITSO in 1999, he worked in the IBM Technical Support Center, providing Level 2 support for IBM storage products. Jon has 19 years of experience in storage software and management, services, and support, and is both an IBM Certified IT Specialist, and an IBM SAN Certified Specialist.

**Rajani Kanth** is a Software Engineer at IBM Software Labs, India. He has over five years of experience in UNIX system administration on Sun Solaris, Sun Fire hardware, and Veritas volume manager. His areas of expertise include storage area networking, Sun Solaris, Sun Fire hardware, Veritas Volume Manager, and HACMP™. He holds a Master's Degree in Civil Engineering from Indian Institute

of Technology Roorkee and is a Sun Certified System Administrator, Microsoft® Certified Systems Engineer, Certified Lotus® Professional, and has an IBM Certification in programming.

**Andre Telles** is a Senior Storage Consultant for IBM TotalStorage SAN, pSeries® and xSeries® Solutions at Syscorp Tecnologia in Sao Paulo, Brazil. Before joining Syscorp in 2002, he worked for EMC² Brazil designing and implementing storage solutions, and also worked at IBM Brazil providing Level 2 support for IBM pSeries and xSeries products. Andre has nine years of experience in IT implementation, design, support, and services, and is an IBM pSeries Administration and Support Certified Specialist, and also a CNE-Certified IntraNetwork Engineer.

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

Tom Cady  
Deanna Polm  
Sangam Racherla  
Sokkieng Wang  
International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center

Julie Czubik  
International Technical Support Organization, Poughkeepsie Center

The previous authors of the -00 and -01 versions of this redbook:

Angelo Bernasconi  
Ravi Kumar Khattar  
Peter Mescher  
Mark S. Murphy  
Kjell E. Nyström  
Fred Scholten  
Giulio John Tarella

Cal Blombaum  
Lisa Dorr  
Scott Drummond  
Michael Starling  
Jeremy Stroup  
Michelle Wright  
IBM Storage Systems Group

Jim Baldyga  
Brian Steffler  
Brocade Communications Systems

Susheel Chitre

Reena Choudhry  
Gareth Flook  
Seth Mason  
Cisco Systems

Dave Burchwell  
CNT Technologies Corporation

Brent Anderson  
McDATA Corporation

Tom and Jenny Chang  
Garden Inn Hotel, Los Gatos, California

## Become a published author

Join us for a two- to six-week residency program! Help write an IBM Redbook dealing with specific products or solutions, while getting hands-on experience with leading-edge technologies. You'll team with IBM technical professionals, Business Partners and/or customers.

Your efforts will help increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction. As a bonus, you'll develop a network of contacts in IBM development labs, and increase your productivity and marketability.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at:

[ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html](http://ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html)

## Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our Redbooks™ to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this or other Redbooks in one of the following ways:

- ▶ Use the online **Contact us** review redbook form found at:

[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

- ▶ Send your comments in an email to:

[redbook@us.ibm.com](mailto:redbook@us.ibm.com)

- ▶ Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization  
Dept. QXXE Building 80-E2  
650 Harry Road  
San Jose, California 95120-6099







# Introduction to storage area networks

Computing is based on information. Information is the underlying resource on which all computing processes are based; it is a company asset. Information is stored on storage media, and is accessed by applications executing on a server. Often the information is a unique company asset. Information is created and acquired every second of every day.

To ensure that any business delivers the expected results, they must have access to accurate information, and without delay. The management and protection of business information is vital for the availability of business processes.

The advent of client/server computing created a new set of problems, such as escalating management costs, as well as new storage management problems such as those introduced by government and legal requirements to safely maintain and guard information.

Information that once was centralized in a mainframe environment is now dispersed across the network, geographically or locally, and it is this that introduces the potential for mismanagement to occur. With geographically dispersed data, coupled with the need for instant access to information, an infrastructure model that supported the needs of its users was a necessity.

These needs, however, are not one-way traffic. Both users and owners of the information have differing, and often diverse, needs and problems.

## 1.1 The need for a SAN

The 1990's witnessed a major shift away from the traditional mainframe, host-centric model of computing to the client/server model. Today, many organizations have hundreds, even thousands, of distributed servers and client systems installed throughout the enterprise. Many of these systems are powerful computers, with more processing capability than many mainframe computers had only a few years ago.

Storage, for the most part, is directly connected by a dedicated channel to the server it supports. Frequently the servers are interconnected using local area networks (LAN) and wide area networks (WAN), to communicate and exchange data. The amount of disk storage capacity attached to such systems has grown exponentially in recent years. It is commonplace for a desktop personal computer or ThinkPad® today to have storage in the order of tens of Gigabytes. There has been a move to disk arrays, comprising a number of disk drives. The arrays may be “just a bunch of disks” (JBOD), or various implementations of redundant arrays of independent disks (RAID). The capacity of such arrays may be measured in tens or hundreds of GBs, but I/O bandwidth has not kept pace with the rapid growth in processor speeds and disk capacities.

Distributed clients and servers are frequently chosen to meet specific application needs. They may, therefore, run different operating systems (such as Windows® NT, UNIX® of differing flavors, Novell Netware, VMS, and so on), and different database software (for example, DB2®, Oracle, Informix®, SQL Server). Consequently, they have different file systems and different data formats.

Managing this multi-platform, multi-vendor, networked environment has become increasingly complex and costly. Multiple vendor's software tools, and appropriately skilled human resources must be maintained to handle data and storage resource management on the many differing systems in the enterprise. Surveys published by industry analysts consistently show that management costs associated with distributed storage are much greater, up to 10 times more, than the cost of managing consolidated or centralized storage. This includes costs of backup, recovery, space management, performance management, and disaster recovery planning.

Disk storage is often purchased from the processor vendor as an integral feature, and it is difficult to establish if the price you pay per gigabyte (GB) is competitive, compared to the market price of disk storage. Disks and tape drives, directly attached to one client or server, cannot be used by other systems, leading to inefficient use of hardware resources. Organizations often find that they have to purchase more storage capacity, even though free capacity is available (but is attached to other platforms).

Additionally, it is difficult to scale capacity and performance to meet rapidly changing requirements, such as the explosive growth in e-business applications, and the need to manage information over its entire life cycle, from conception to intentional destruction.

Information stored on one system cannot readily be made available to other users, except by creating duplicate copies, and moving the copy to storage that is attached to another server. Movement of large files of data may result in significant degradation of performance of the LAN/WAN, causing conflicts with mission-critical applications. Multiple copies of the same data may lead to inconsistencies between one copy and another. Data spread on multiple small systems is difficult to coordinate and share for enterprise-wide applications, such as e-business, Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP), Data Warehouse, and Business Intelligence (BI).

Backup and recovery operations across a LAN may also cause serious disruption to normal application traffic. Even using fast Gigabit Ethernet transport, sustained throughput from a single server to tape is about 25 GB per hour. It would take approximately 12 hours to fully back up a relatively moderate departmental database of 300 GBs. This may exceed the available window of time in which this must be completed, and it may not be a practical solution if business operations span multiple time zones. It is increasingly evident to IT managers that these characteristics of client/server computing are too costly, and too inefficient. The islands of information resulting from the distributed model of computing do not match the needs of the e-business enterprise.

New ways must be found to control costs, improve efficiency, and simplify the storage infrastructure to meet the requirements of the business.

One of the first steps to improved control of computing resources throughout the enterprise is improved connectivity. Before we look at the improved connectivity options that exist today, we will discuss three of the initiatives that exist to solve the business problems that we are faced with today.

### **1.1.1 Infrastructure simplification**

The IBM TotalStorage products that are discussed later can help consolidate the storage environment. Consolidated storage environments have fewer elements to manage, which leads to increased resource utilization, can simplify storage management, can provide the ability to share storage servers over extended distances, and can provide economies of scale for owning disk storage servers. These environments can be more resilient and provide an infrastructure for virtualization and automation. There are four main methods of consolidation: Centralization of data centers, physical consolidation, data integration, and application integration.

## 1.1.2 Information lifecycle management

Information has become an increasingly valuable asset. But as the quantity of information grows, it becomes increasingly costly and complex to store and manage. Information lifecycle management (ILM) is a process for managing information through its life cycle, from conception until intentional disposal, in a manner that optimizes storage, and maintains a high level of access at the lowest cost. The most efficient ILM strategy for a business manages information according to its value. For small and medium-sized enterprises, predicting storage needs and controlling costs can be especially challenging as the business grows.

## 1.1.3 Business continuance

It goes without saying that the business climate in today's on demand era is highly competitive. Customers, employees, suppliers, and business partners expect to be able to tap into their information at any hour of the day from any corner of the globe. Continuous business operations are no longer optional—they are a business imperative to becoming successful and maintaining a competitive advantage. Businesses must also be increasingly sensitive to issues of customer privacy and data security, so that vital information assets are not compromised. Factor in those legal and regulatory requirements, and the inherent demands of participating in the global economy, and accountability, and all of a sudden the lot of an IT manager is not a happy one.

No wonder a sound and comprehensive business continuity strategy has become a business imperative.

## 1.2 The storage area network

A SAN is a specialized, high-speed network attaching servers and storage devices. It is sometimes called “the network behind the servers.” A SAN allows “any-to-any” connection across the network, using interconnect elements such as routers, gateways, hubs, switches, and directors. It eliminates the traditional dedicated connection between a server and storage, and the concept that the server effectively “owns and manages” the storage devices. It also eliminates any restriction to the amount of data that a server can access, currently limited by the number of storage devices, which can be attached to the individual server. Instead, a SAN introduces the flexibility of networking to enable one server or many heterogeneous servers to share a common storage utility, which may comprise many storage devices, including disk, tape, and optical storage. And, the storage utility may be located far from the servers that use it.

The SAN can be viewed as an extension to the storage bus concept, which enables storage devices and servers to be interconnected using similar elements as in local area networks (LANs) and wide area networks (WANs): Routers, hubs, switches, directors, and gateways. A SAN can be shared between servers and/or dedicated to one server. It can be local, or can be extended over geographical distances.

The diagram in Figure 1-1 shows a tiered overview of a SAN connecting multiple servers to multiple storage systems.

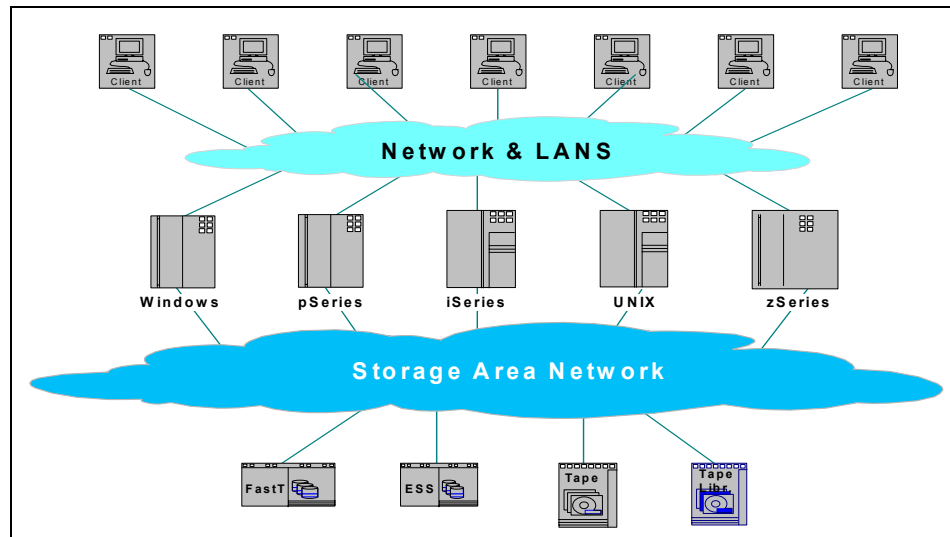


Figure 1-1 A SAN

SANs create new methods of attaching storage to servers. These new methods can enable great improvements in both availability and performance. Today's SANs are used to connect shared storage arrays and tape libraries to multiple servers, and are used by clustered servers for failover. They can interconnect mainframe disk or tape to mainframe servers where the SAN devices allow the intermixing of open systems (such as Windows, AIX®) and mainframe traffic.

A SAN can be used to bypass traditional network bottlenecks. It facilitates direct, high-speed data transfers between servers and storage devices, potentially in any of the following three ways:

- ▶ Server to storage: This is the traditional model of interaction with storage devices. The advantage is that the same storage device may be accessed serially or concurrently by multiple servers.
- ▶ Server to server: A SAN may be used for high-speed, high-volume communications between servers.

- ▶ Storage to storage: This outboard data movement capability enables data to be moved without server intervention, thereby freeing up server processor cycles for other activities like application processing. Examples include a disk device backing up its data to a tape device without server intervention, or remote device mirroring across the SAN.

SANs allow applications that move data to perform better, for example, by having the data sent directly from the source to the target device with minimal server intervention. SANs also enable new network architectures where multiple hosts access multiple storage devices connected to the same network. Using a SAN can potentially offer the following benefits:

- ▶ Improvements to application availability: Storage is independent of applications and accessible through multiple data paths for better reliability, availability, and serviceability.
- ▶ Higher application performance: Storage processing is off-loaded from servers and moved onto a separate network.
- ▶ Centralized and consolidated storage: Simpler management, scalability, flexibility, and availability.
- ▶ Data transfer and vaulting to remote sites: Remote copy of data enabled for disaster protection and against malicious attacks.
- ▶ Simplified centralized management: Single image of storage media simplifies management.

Before we detail some of the features that are a unique and inherent part of the SAN, we look at other methods for device connectivity.

## 1.3 Storage device connectivity

With the introduction of mainframes, computer scientists began working with various architectures to speed up I/O performance in order to keep pace with increasing server performance and the resulting demand for higher I/O and data throughputs.

In the SAN world, to gauge data throughput when reading a device's specifications, we usually find a definition using gigabit (Gb) or gigabyte (GB) as the unit of measure. Similarly, we may also find megabit (Mb) and megabyte (MB). For the purpose of this book we use:

- ▶ 1 Gbps = 100 MBps
- ▶ 2 Gb/s = 200 MBps
- ▶ 4 Gbps = 400 MBps
- ▶ 8 Gbps = 800 MBps

- ▶ 10 Gbps = 1000 MBps

We now describe the prevalent storage device connectivity methods.

### 1.3.1 Server-attached storage

The earliest approach was to tightly couple the storage device with the server. This server-attached storage approach keeps performance overhead to a minimum. Storage is attached directly to the server bus using an adapter card, and the storage device is dedicated to a single server. The server itself controls the I/O to the device, issues the low-level device commands, and monitors device responses.

Initially, disk and tape storage devices had no on-board intelligence. They just executed the server's I/O requests. Subsequent evolution led to the introduction of control units. Control units are storage off-load servers that contain a limited level of intelligence, and are able to perform functions, such as I/O request caching for performance improvements, or dual copy of data (RAID 1) for availability. Many advanced storage functions have been developed and implemented inside the control unit.

### 1.3.2 Fibre Channel

The Fibre Channel (FC) interface is a serial interface (usually implemented with fiber-optic cable). It is the primary architecture for most SANs at this time. There are many vendors in the marketplace producing Fibre Channel adapters. The maximum length for a Fibre Channel cable is dependant on many factors such as the fiber-optic cable size and its mode. With a Fibre Channel connection, we can have up to 1 GBps data transfer, and increasingly longer distances.

### 1.3.3 FICON®

FICON architecture is an enhancement of, rather than a replacement for, the now relatively old ESCON® architecture. As a SAN is Fibre Channel based, FICON is a prerequisite for z/OS® systems to fully participate in a heterogeneous SAN, where the SAN switch devices allow the mixture of open systems and mainframe traffic.

FICON is a protocol that uses Fibre Channel for transportation. FICON channels are capable of data rates up to 200 MB/s full duplex, extend the channel distance (up to 100 km), increase the number of control unit images per link, increase the number of device addresses per control unit link, and retain the topology and switch management characteristics of ESCON.



The architectures discussed above are used in z/OS environments and are discussed in z/OS terms. Slightly different approaches were taken on other platforms, particularly in the UNIX and PC worlds where there are different connectivity methods.

### 1.3.4 SCSI

The Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) is a parallel interface. The SCSI protocols can be used on Fibre Channel (where they are then called FCP). The SCSI devices are connected to form a terminated bus (the bus is terminated using a terminator). The maximum cable length is 25 meters, and a maximum of 16 devices can be connected to a single SCSI bus. The SCSI protocol has many configuration options for error handling and supports both disconnect and reconnect to devices and multiple initiator requests. Usually, a host computer is an initiator. Multiple initiator support allows multiple hosts to attach to the same devices and is used in support of clustered configurations. The Ultra3 SCSI adapter today can have a data transfer up to 160 MB/s.

### 1.3.5 Ethernet interface

Ethernet adapters are typically used for networking connections over the TCP/IP protocol and can be used today to share storage devices. With an Ethernet adapter we can have up to 10 Gb/s of data transferred.

In the following sections we present an overview of the basic SAN storage concepts and building blocks, which enable the vision stated above to become a reality.

### 1.3.6 Network Attached Storage

Network Attached Storage (NAS) is basically a LAN-attached file server that serves files using a network protocol such as Network File System (NFS). NAS is a term used to refer to storage elements that connect to a network and provide file access services to computer systems. A NAS storage element consists of an engine that implements the file services (using access protocols such as NFS or CIFS), and one or more devices, on which data is stored. NAS elements may be attached to any type of network. From a SAN perspective, a SAN-attached NAS engine is treated just like any other server.

### 1.3.7 iSCSI

Internet SCSI (iSCSI) is a transport *protocol* that carries SCSI commands from an initiator to a target. It is a data storage networking protocol that transports

standard Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) requests over the standard Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) networking technology.

iSCSI enables the implementation of IP-based storage area networks (SANs), enabling customers to use the same networking technologies — from the box level to the Internet — for both storage and data networks. As it uses TCP/IP, iSCSI is also well suited to run over almost any physical network. By eliminating the need for a second network technology just for storage, iSCSI will lower the costs of deploying networked storage and increase its potential market.

### **1.3.8 iFCP**

Internet Fibre Channel Protocol (iFCP) is a mechanism for transmitting data to and from Fibre Channel storage devices in a SAN, or on the Internet using TCP/IP.

iFCP gives the ability to incorporate already existing SCSI and Fibre Channel networks into the Internet. iFCP is able to be used in tandem with existing Fibre Channel protocols, such as FCIP, or it can replace them. Whereas FCIP is a tunneled solution, iFCP is an FCP routed solution.

The appeal of iFCP is that for customers that have a wide range of FC devices, and who want to be able to connect these with the IP network, iFCP gives the ability to permit this. iFCP can interconnect FC SANs with IP networks, and also allows customers to use the TCP/IP network in place of the SAN.

iFCP is a gateway-to-gateway protocol, and does not simply encapsulate FC block data. Gateway devices are used as the medium between the FC initiators and targets. As these gateways can either replace or be used in tandem with existing FC fabrics, iFCP could be used to help migration from a Fibre Channel SAN to an IP SAN, or allow a combination of both.

### **1.3.9 FCIP**

Fibre Channel over IP (FCIP) is also known as Fibre Channel tunneling or storage tunneling. It is a method of allowing the transmission of Fibre Channel information to be tunneled through the IP network. Because most organizations already have an existing IP infrastructure, the attraction of being able to link geographically dispersed SANs, at a relatively low cost, is enormous.

FCIP encapsulates Fibre Channel block data and subsequently transports it over a TCP socket. TCP/IP services are utilized to establish connectivity between remote SANs. Any congestion control and management, as well as data error and data loss recovery, is handled by TCP/IP services, and does not affect FC fabric services.

The major point with FCIP is that it does not replace FC with IP, it simply allows deployments of FC fabrics using IP tunnelling. The assumption that this might lead to is that the “industry” has decided that FC-based SANs are more than appropriate, and that the only need for the IP connection is to facilitate any distance requirement that is beyond the current scope of an FCP SAN.

## 1.4 SAN definition and evolution

The Storage Network Industry Association (SNIA) defines SAN as a network whose primary purpose is the transfer of data between computer systems and storage elements. A SAN consists of a communication infrastructure, which provides physical connections; and a management layer, which organizes the connections, storage elements, and computer systems so that data transfer is secure and robust. The term SAN is usually (but not necessarily) identified with block I/O services rather than file access services.

A SAN can also be a storage system consisting of storage elements, storage devices, computer systems, and/or appliances, plus all control software, communicating over a network.

**Note:** The SNIA definition specifically does not identify the term SAN with Fibre Channel technology. When the term SAN is used in connection with Fibre Channel technology, use of a qualified phrase such as *Fibre Channel SAN* is encouraged. According to this definition, an Ethernet-based network whose primary purpose is to provide access to storage elements would be considered a SAN. SANs are sometimes also used for system interconnection in clusters.

Are SANs themselves evolving? Or are they likely to become extinct? Certainly reports of the death of SANs are greatly exaggerated. Too much investment has taken place for SANs to quietly lay down and go the way of the dinosaurs. There is no new “killer application” or technology on the radar that need concern us. However, there is a trend that is beginning to pick up pace in the SAN world.

The evolution that is taking place is one of diversity. More and more we are seeing advances in technology find their way into the SAN chassis. What is quickly happening is that SANs are becoming multi-protocol capable. The industry recognizes that it is no longer acceptable to build a solution that will either create SAN islands (in much the same way as islands of information existed), or take an inordinate amount of cabling, support, power, and management.

Rather, the trend towards the simplification of the SAN infrastructure suddenly took a turn for the better. In a single footprint, multiple technologies that were once competing for floor space now happily sit alongside the “competition” in a single chassis. It is not uncommon to see FCIP, iFCP, and iSCSI together these days, and they are working together rather nicely. The SAN has quietly become an enabler for many technologies and protocols to share the same arena, without the somewhat tiresome arguments of which is “best.”

So, it is a case of evolution, not revolution, in the SAN world. As everything has to start somewhere, we will look at one of the principal enablers for the SAN.

### 1.4.1 Fibre Channel architecture

Fibre Channel is the predominant architecture upon which SAN implementations are built. Fibre Channel is a technology standard that allows data to be transferred from one network node to another at extremely high speeds. Current implementations transfer data up to 10 Gbps, and many companies have products that will support this. The Fibre Channel standard is accredited by many standards bodies, technical associations, vendors, and industry-wide consortiums. There are many products on the market that take advantage of FC’s high-speed, high-availability characteristics.

Fibre Channel was completely developed through industry cooperation, unlike SCSI, which was developed by a vendor, and submitted for standardization after the fact.

**Note:** Be aware that the word *Fibre* in Fibre Channel is spelled in the French way rather than the American way. This is because the interconnections between nodes are not necessarily based on fiber optics, but can also be based on copper cables. It is also the ANSI X3T11 Technical Committee’s preferred spelling. This is the standards organization responsible for Fibre Channel (and certain other standards) for moving electronic data in and out of computers. Even though copper-cable based SANs are rare, the spelling has remained.

Some people refer to Fibre Channel architecture as the Fibre version of SCSI. Fibre Channel is an architecture used to carry IPI traffic, IP traffic, FICON traffic, FCP (SCSI) traffic, and possibly traffic using other protocols, all on the standard FC transport. An analogy could be Ethernet, where IP, NetBIOS, and SNA are all used simultaneously over a single Ethernet adapter, since these are all protocols with mappings to Ethernet. Similarly, there are many protocols mapped onto FC.

FICON is the standard protocol for z/OS, and will replace all ESCON environments over time. FCP is the standard protocol for open systems, both using Fibre Channel architecture to carry the traffic.

In the following sections, we introduce some basic Fibre Channel concepts, starting with the physical and upper layers and topologies, and we proceed to define the classes of service that are offered.

In Chapter 3, “SAN fabrics and connectivity” on page 71, we introduce some of the other concepts associated with Fibre Channel, namely port types, addressing, fabric services, and Fabric Shortest Path First (FSPF).

### Physical layers

Fibre Channel is structured in independent layers, as are other networking protocols. There are five layers, where 0 is the lowest layer. The physical layers are 0 to 2.

In Figure 1-2 we show the upper and physical layers.

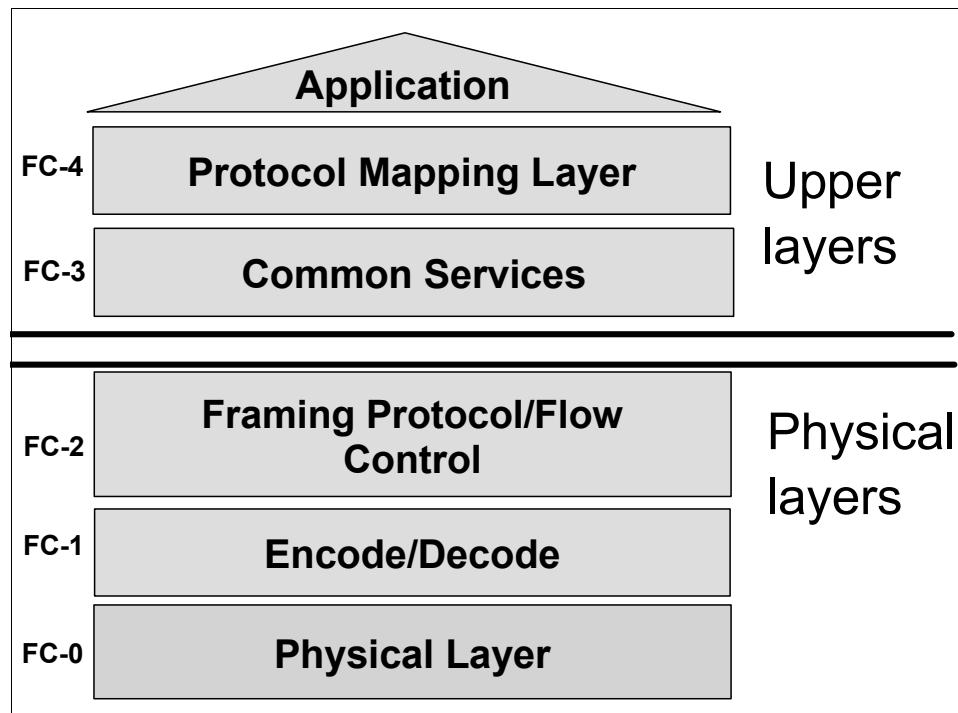


Figure 1-2 Upper and physical layers

They are as follows:

- ▶ FC-0 defines physical media and transmission rates. These include cables and connectors, drivers, transmitters, and receivers.
- ▶ FC-1 defines encoding schemes. These are used to synchronize data for transmission.
- ▶ FC-2 defines the framing protocol and flow control. This protocol is self-configuring and supports point-to-point, arbitrated loop, and switched topologies.

## Upper layers

Fibre Channel is a transport service that moves data quickly and reliably between nodes. The two upper layers enhance the functionality of Fibre Channel and provide common implementations for interoperability:

- ▶ FC-3 defines common services for nodes. One defined service is multicast, to deliver one transmission to multiple destinations.
- ▶ FC-4 defines upper layer protocol mapping. Protocols such as FCP (SCSI), FICON, and IP can be mapped to the Fibre Channel transport service.

## Topologies

This is the logical layout of the components of a computer system or network, and their interconnections. Topology, as we use the term, deals with questions of *what* components are directly connected to other components from the standpoint of being able to communicate. It does not deal with questions about the physical location of components or interconnecting cables.

Fibre Channel interconnects nodes using three physical topologies that can have variants. These three topologies are:

- ▶ *Point-to-point*: The point-to-point topology consists of a single connection between two nodes. All the bandwidth is dedicated to these two nodes.
- ▶ *Loop*: In the loop topology, the bandwidth is shared between all the nodes connected to the loop. The loop can be wired node-to-node; however, if a node fails or is not powered on, the loop is out of operation. This is overcome by using a hub. A hub opens the loop when a new node is connected, and closes it when a node disconnects.
- ▶ *Switched or fabric*: A switch allows multiple concurrent connections between nodes. There can be two types of switches: Circuit switches and frame switches. Circuit switches establish a dedicated connection between two nodes, whereas frame switches route frames between nodes and establish the connection only when needed. This is also known as switched fabric.

## Classes of service

A mechanism for managing traffic in a network by specifying message or packet priority is needed. The classes of service are the characteristics and guarantees of the transport layer of a Fibre Channel circuit. Different classes of service may simultaneously exist in a fabric.

Fibre Channel provides a logical system of communication for the class of service that is allocated by various login protocols. The following five classes of service are defined:

- ▶ **Class 1: Acknowledged Connection Service**  
A connection-oriented class of communication service in which the entire bandwidth of the link between two ports is dedicated for communication between the ports, and not used for other purposes. Also known as dedicated connection service. Class 1 service is not widely implemented.
- ▶ **Class 2: Acknowledged Connectionless Service**  
A connectionless Fibre Channel communication service, which multiplexes frames from one or more N\_Ports or NL\_Ports. Class 2 frames are explicitly acknowledged by the receiver, and notification of delivery failure is provided. This class of service includes end-to-end flow control.
- ▶ **Class 3: Unacknowledged Connectionless Service**  
A connectionless Fibre Channel communication service, which multiplexes frames to or from one or more N\_Ports or NL\_Ports. Class 3 frames are datagrams, that is, they are not explicitly acknowledged, and delivery is on a “best effort” basis.
- ▶ **Class 4: Fractional Bandwidth Connection Oriented Service**  
A connection-oriented class of communication service in which a fraction of the bandwidth of the link between two ports is dedicated for communication between the ports. The remaining bandwidth may be used for other purposes. Class 4 service supports bounds on the maximum time to deliver a frame from sender to receiver. This is also known as fractional service. Class 4 service is not widely implemented.
- ▶ **Class 6: Simplex Connection Service**  
A connection-oriented class of communication service between two Fibre Channel ports that provides dedicated unidirectional connections for reliable multicast. Also known as uni-directional dedicated connection service. Class 6 service is not widely implemented.

## 1.5 SAN components

As stated previously, Fibre Channel is the predominant architecture upon which most SAN implementations are built, with FICON as the standard protocol for z/OS systems, and FCP as the standard protocol for open systems. The SAN components described in the following sections are Fibre Channel-based, and are shown in Figure 1-3.

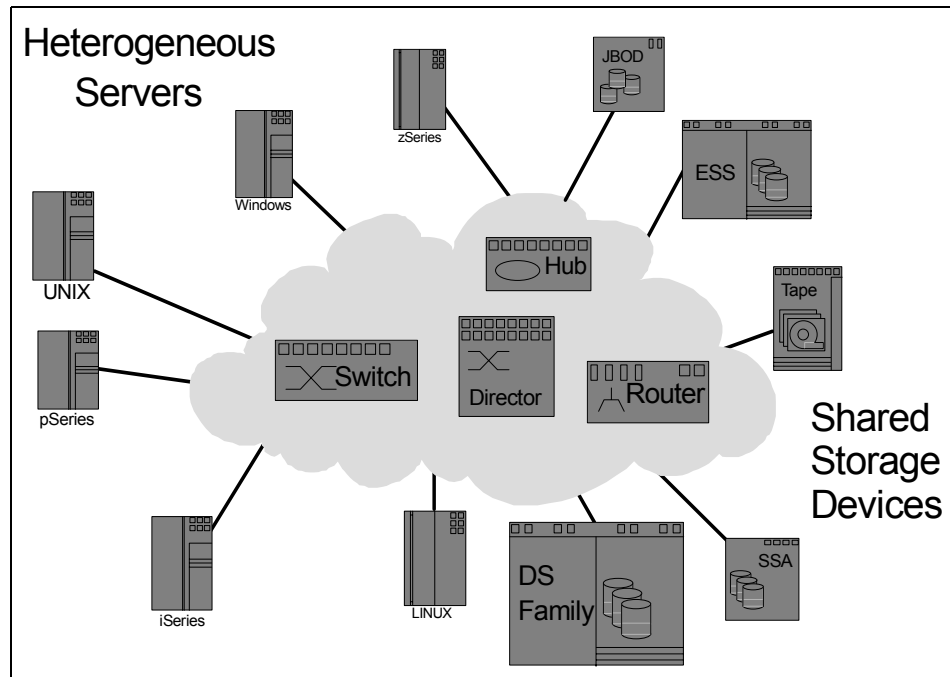


Figure 1-3 SAN components

### 1.5.1 SAN servers

The server infrastructure is the underlying reason for all SAN solutions. This infrastructure includes a mix of server platforms such as Windows, UNIX (and its various flavors), and z/OS. With initiatives such as server consolidation and e-business, the need for SANs will increase, making the importance of storage in the network greater.

### 1.5.2 SAN storage

The storage infrastructure is the foundation on which information relies, and therefore must support a company's business objectives and business model. In



this environment simply deploying more and faster storage devices is not enough. A SAN infrastructure provides enhanced network availability, data accessibility, and system manageability. It is important to remember that a good SAN begins with a good design. This is not only a maxim, but must be a philosophy when we design or implement a SAN.

The SAN liberates the storage device so it is not on a particular server bus, and attaches it directly to the network. In other words, storage is externalized and can be functionally distributed across the organization. The SAN also enables the centralization of storage devices and the clustering of servers, which has the potential to make for easier and less expensive centralized administration that lowers the total cost of ownership (TCO).

### **1.5.3 SAN interconnects**

The first element that must be considered in any SAN implementation is the connectivity of storage and server components typically using Fibre Channel. The components listed below have typically been used for LAN and WAN implementations. SANs, like LANs, interconnect the storage interfaces together into many network configurations and across long distances.

Much of the terminology used for SAN has its origins in IP network terminology. In some cases, the industry and IBM use different terms that mean the same thing, and in some cases, mean different things.

In the chapters that follow, we describe the servers, storage devices, and interconnects that are commonly encountered.

## **1.6 Storage technology trends driving SAN solutions**

There are many trends driving the evolution of storage and storage management. Heterogeneous IT environments are here to stay. Companies and IT departments buy applications and often accept the application vendor's suggested platform. This leads to having many different platforms in the IT shop.

This leads to a second trend, centralization of server and storage assets. This trend is driven by rightsizing and rehosting trends, as opposed to the pure downsizing practiced throughout the 1990s. Storage capacity is also growing, and increasing amounts of data are stored in distributed environments. This leads to issues related to appropriate management and control of the underlying storage resources.

The advent of the Internet and 24x7 accessibility requirements have led to greater emphasis being put on the availability of storage resources, and the

reduction of windows in which to perform necessary storage management operations.

Another important trend is the advent of the *virtual* resource. A virtualized resource is a solution that performs some kind of function or service transparently. The system using the virtual resource continues to function as if it were using a real resource, but the underlying technology in the solution may be completely different from the original technology. This storage virtualization offers the following benefits:

- ▶ Integrates with any storage from any vendor
- ▶ Simplifies SAN management and reduces costs
- ▶ Improves ROI on storage assets
- ▶ Reduces storage-related application downtime

All of these trends, and more, are driving SAN implementations.

### 1.6.1 Today's SAN requirements

The storage infrastructure needs to support the business objectives and new emerging business models. The requirements of today's SAN are:

- ▶ Unlimited and just-in-time scalability. Businesses require the capability to flexibly adapt to rapidly changing demands for storage resources.
- ▶ Infrastructure simplification. Businesses require an easy-to-implement SAN with the minimum of management and maintenance. The more distributed the enterprise environment, the more costs are involved in terms of management. Consolidating the infrastructure can save costs and provide a greater return on investment (ROI).
- ▶ Flexible and heterogeneous connectivity. The storage resource must be able to support whatever platforms are within the SAN environment. This is essentially an investment protection requirement that allows you to configure a storage resource for one set of systems, and subsequently configure part of the capacity to other systems on an as-needed basis.
- ▶ Secure transactions and data transfer. This is a security and integrity requirement aiming to guarantee that data from one application or system does not become overlaid or corrupted by other applications or systems. Authorization also requires the ability to fence off one system's data from other systems.
- ▶ Information lifecycle management. A major requirement is the ability to manage the information from conception to disposal.
- ▶ 24x7 response and availability. This is an availability requirement that implies both protection against media (that are possibly using RAID technologies)

failure as well as ease of data migration between devices, without interrupting application processing.

- ▶ Storage consolidation. This attaches storage to multiple servers concurrently, and leverages investments.
- ▶ Storage sharing. Once storage is attached to multiple servers, it can be partitioned or shared between servers that operate with the same operating system.
- ▶ Data sharing. This can be enabled if storage is shared and the software to provide the necessary locking and synchronization functions exist.
- ▶ Improvements to backup and recovery processes. Attaching disk and tape devices to the same SAN allows for fast data movement between devices, which provides enhanced backup and recovery capabilities. Such as:
  - Serverless backup. This is the possibility to back up your data without using the computing processor of your servers.
  - Synchronous copy. This makes sure your data is at two or more places before your application goes to the next step.
  - Asynchronous copy. This makes sure your data is at two or more places within a short time. It is the disk subsystem that controls the data flow.
- ▶ Business continuance. The ability to continue operations without interruption, even in the case of a disaster at one location, is enabled by remote mirroring of data.
- ▶ Higher availability. SAN any-to-any connectivity provides higher availability by enabling mirroring, multipathing, alternate pathing, and other methods.
- ▶ Improved performance. Enhanced performance is enabled because of more efficient transport mechanisms, such as Fibre Channel.
- ▶ Selection of *best in class* products. Products from multiple vendors can operate together, and storage purchase decisions can be made independent of servers.
- ▶ Simplified migration to new technologies. This facilitates both data and storage subsystem migration from one system to another without interrupting service.

To ensure that all these requirements are satisfied, it is important that cooperation between industry vendors is ensured. One of the ways that this is achieved is by the adherence to a set of industry-approved standards.

## 1.6.2 SAN standards

Standards are the base for interoperability of devices and software from different vendors. The SNIA, among others, defined and ratified the standards for the

SANs of today, and will keep defining the standards for tomorrow. All of the players in the SAN industry are using these standards now, as these are the basis for wide acceptance of SANs. Widely accepted standards allow for heterogeneous, cross-platform, multi-vendor deployment of SAN solutions.

As all vendors have accepted these SAN standards, there *should* be no problem in connecting the different vendors into the same SAN network. However, nearly every vendor has an interoperability lab where it tests all kind of combinations between their products and those of other vendors. Some of the most important aspects in these tests are the reliability, error recovery, and performance. If a combination has passed the test, that vendor is going to certify or support this combination.

IBM participates in many industry standards organizations that work in the field of SANs. IBM believes that industry standards must be in place, and if necessary, re-defined for SANs to be a major part of the IT business mainstream.

Probably the most important industry standards organization for SANs is the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA). IBM is a founding member and board officer in SNIA. SNIA and other standards organizations and IBM's participation are described in Chapter 8, "SAN standards and organizations" on page 211.

### 1.6.3 SANs and storage virtualization

Much attention is being focused on storage virtualization. SNIA defines storage virtualization as:

The act of integrating one or more (back-end) services or functions with additional (front-end) functionality for the purpose of providing useful abstractions. Typically, virtualization hides some of the back-end complexity, or adds or integrates new functionality with existing back-end services. Examples of virtualization are the aggregation of multiple instances of a service into one virtualized service, or to add security to an otherwise insecure service. Virtualization can be nested or applied to multiple layers of a system.

Or, to put it in more practical terms, storage virtualization is the pooling of physical storage from multiple network storage devices into what appears to be a single storage device that is managed from a central console.

Storage virtualization techniques are becoming increasingly more prevalent in the IT industry today. Storage virtualization forms one of several layers of virtualization in a storage network, and can be described as "the abstraction from physical volumes of data storage to a logical view of data storage."

This abstraction can be made on several levels of the components of storage networks and is not limited to the disk subsystem. Storage virtualization separates the representation of storage to the operating system (and its users) from the actual physical components. Storage virtualization has been represented and taken for granted in the mainframe environment for many years.

The SAN is making it easier for customers to spread their IT systems out geographically, but even in networks, different types of servers that use different operating systems do not get the full benefit of sharing storage. Instead, the storage is partitioned to each different type of server, which creates complex management and inefficient use of storage. When storage must be added, applications are often disrupted. At the same time, the reduced cost of storage and the technology of storage networks with faster data transfer rates have enabled customers to use increasingly sophisticated applications, such as digital media. This has caused even greater complexity and difficulty of management as the amount of storage required grows at unprecedented rates.





## SAN servers and storage

The foundation that a SAN is built on is the storage and servers that are connected. This chapter presents and discusses servers and storage, and how different types of servers and storage are used in a SAN environment.

The growth of data, and the increasing dependency of businesses on this data, has resulted in various developments in the field of data storage. For example:

- ▶ Different data storage media types suitable for different applications, like disk, tape, and optical media
- ▶ Higher data storage capacity: Increased capacity of disk drives, from a few megabytes to many gigabytes per drive
- ▶ Increased storage performance; for example, 5 MB/s for SCSI-1 up to 10 GB/s for Fibre Channel
- ▶ Many different storage device and server interconnects; for example, SCSI, SSA, FC-AL, FCP, ESCON, FICON, and others
- ▶ Data protection, using solutions such as mirroring and remote copy
- ▶ Storage reliability, using various RAID implementations
- ▶ Data and storage security and manageability
- ▶ Multipathing host redundancy
- ▶ Storage pooling by using virtualization products

In Figure 2-1 we illustrate the evolution of storage architecture in relation to the era, or phase, of computing—from centralized computing with controller-based dedicated storage; to the client/server model with distributed data; and finally to the current networked era with its requirement for universal access to data, robust software tools, and data management solutions.

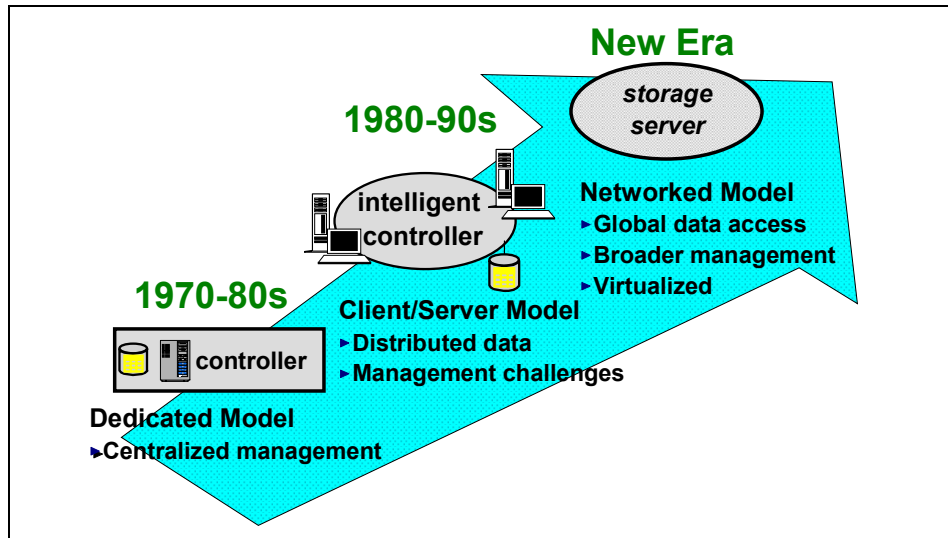


Figure 2-1 The evolution of storage architecture



## 2.1 Servers and storage environments

Before the advent of SANs, NAS, and modern storage systems, each server in an enterprise needed its own storage. In today's environment, many IT organizations are either planning for or are in the process of implementing server, disk, and/or tape storage consolidation. These organizations have experienced the escalating costs associated with managing information residing on servers and storage that is distributed about their enterprise. This is not to mention the difficulty in implementing and enforcing business recovery procedures, and providing consistent access securely to the information. The objective is to move from an environment of islands of information on distributed servers, with multiple copies of the same data and varying storage management processes, to a consolidated storage management environment, where a single copy of the data can be managed in a central repository. The ultimate goal is to provide transparent access to enterprise information to all users.

### 2.1.1 The challenge

The real challenge today is to implement true heterogeneous storage and data environments across different hardware and operating systems platforms; for example, disk and tape sharing across z/OS, OS/400®, UNIX, and Windows.

On demand computing for storage typically occurs in four areas:

- ▶ Consolidation

Concentrating systems and resources into locations with fewer but more powerful servers and storage pools can help increase IT efficiency, and simplify the infrastructure. Data and application integration can help simplify systems management and improve security. And centralized storage management tools can help improve scalability, availability, and disaster tolerance.

- ▶ Virtualization

Storage virtualization helps you to make complexity nearly transparent and can offer you a composite view of your storage assets to help you get the most out of your resources. *This may help reduce capital and administrative costs*, while giving users better service and availability. Virtualization is designed to help make your IT infrastructure more responsive, scalable, and available.

- ▶ Automation

Choosing storage components with autonomic capabilities can improve availability and responsiveness—and help protect your data as your storage needs grow. As soon as day-to-day tasks are automated, storage

administrators may be able to spend more time on critical, higher-level tasks unique to a company's business mission.

► Integration

An effective on demand storage environment helps facilitate data integration while freeing personnel resources to work on this integration. When all servers have secure access to all data, your infrastructure may be better able to respond to your users information needs.

Figure 2-2 illustrates the consolidation movement from the distributed islands of information to a single heterogeneous configuration.

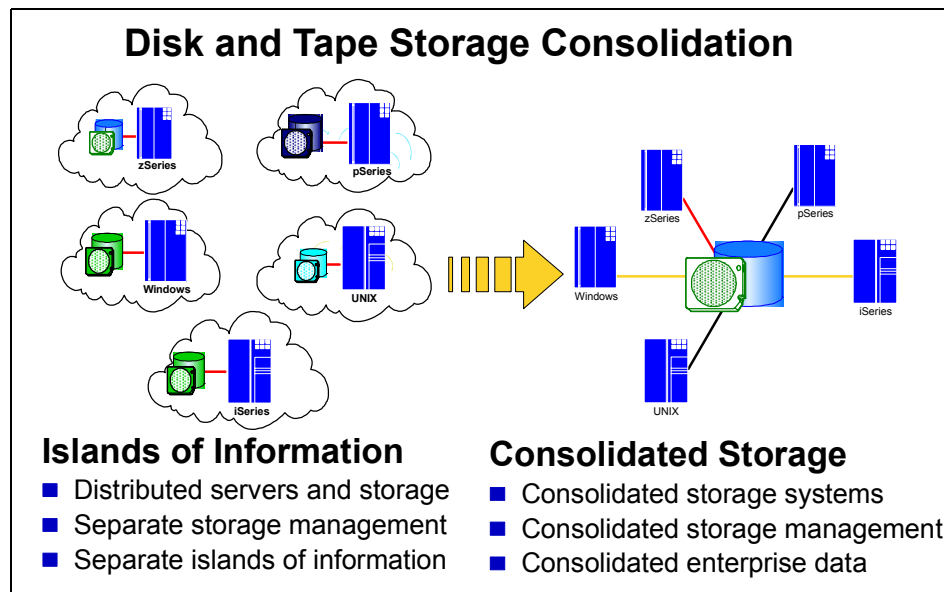


Figure 2-2 Disk and tape storage consolidation

For the past several years, IBM has been working to develop products to meet this ambitious challenge. These products combine technologies from inside and outside IBM to create complete storage solutions. A SAN solution is just that—it is a solution, not a product.

Storage consolidation is not a simple task. Each platform, along with its operating system, treats data differently at various levels in the system architecture, thus creating some of these many challenges:

- Different attachment protocols, such as SCSI, ESCON, and FICON
- Different data formats, such as Extended Count Key Data (ECKD™), blocks, clusters, and sectors

- ▶ Different file systems, such as Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM), Journal File System (JFS), Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2), Andrew File System (AFS®), and Windows NT® File System (NTFS)
- ▶ OS/400, with the concept of single-level storage
- ▶ Different file system structures, such as catalogs and directories
- ▶ Different file naming conventions, such as AAA.BBB.CCC and DIR/Xxx/Yyy
- ▶ Different data encoding techniques, such as EBCDIC, ASCII, floating point, and little or big endian

In Figure 2-3 is a brief summary of these differences for several different systems.

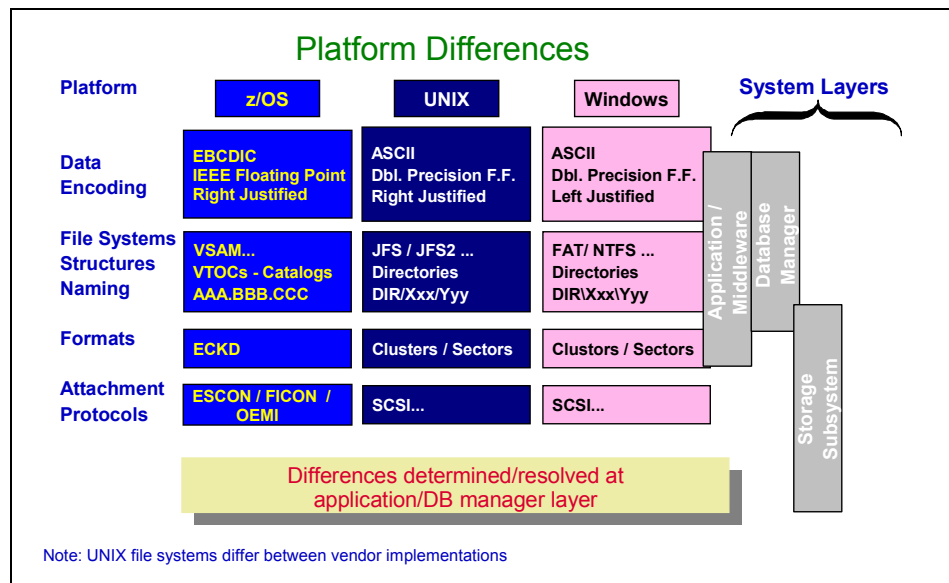


Figure 2-3 Hardware and operating systems differences

## 2.2 Server environments

Each of the different server platforms (zSeries®, UNIX (AIX, HP, SUN, LINUX, and others), OS/400, and Windows (PC Servers) have implemented SAN solutions using various interconnects and storage technologies. The following sections review these solutions and the different implementations on each of the platforms.

## 2.2.1 zSeries servers

The zSeries (formerly known as S/390®) is a processor(s) and operating system set. Historically, zSeries servers have supported many different operating systems, such as z/OS, OS/390®, VM, VSE, and TPF, which have been enhanced over the years. The processor to storage device interconnection has also evolved from a bus and tag interface to ESCON channels, and now to FICON channels. Figure 2-4 shows the various processor-to-storage interfaces.

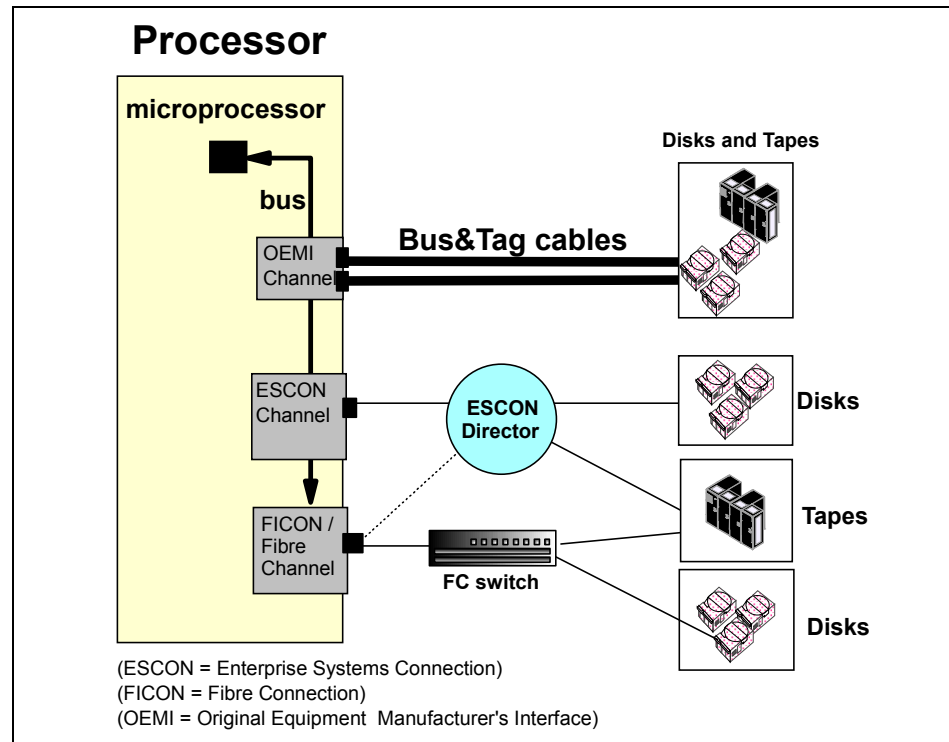


Figure 2-4 Processor-to-storage interface connections

Due to architectural differences, and extremely strict data integrity and management requirements, the implementation of FICON has been somewhat behind that of FCP on open systems. However, at the time of writing, FICON has now caught up with FCP SANs, and they co-exist quite amicably.

For the latest news on zSeries TotalStorage products, refer to:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products\\_zseries.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products_zseries.html)

For the latest news on zSeries FICON connectivity, refer to:

<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/connectivity/>

In addition to FICON for traditional zSeries operating systems, IBM has standard Fibre Channel adapters for use with zSeries servers that can implement Linux®.

## 2.2.2 pSeries servers

The IBM pSeries line of servers, running a UNIX operating system called AIX, offers various processor to storage interfaces, including SCSI, SSA, and Fibre Channel. The SSA interconnection has primarily been used for disk storage. Fibre Channel adapters are able to connect to tape and disk. Figure 2-5 shows the various processor-to-storage interconnect options for the pSeries family.

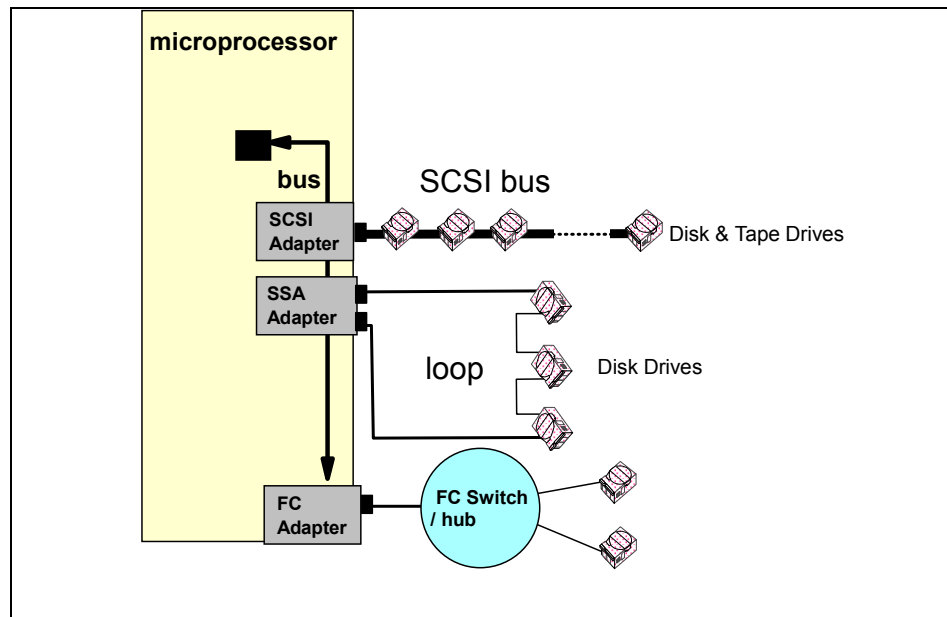


Figure 2-5 pSeries processor-to-storage interconnections

The various UNIX system vendors in the market deploy different variants of the UNIX operating system, each having some unique enhancements, and often supporting different file systems such as the Journal File System (JFS), Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2), and the Andrew File System (AFS). The server-to-storage interconnect is similar to pSeries, as shown in Figure 2-5.

For the latest news on pSeries TotalStorage products, refer to:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products\\_pseries.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products_pseries.html)

## 2.2.3 iSeries™ servers

The iSeries system architecture is defined by a high-level machine interface, referred to as Technology Independent Machine Interface (TIMI), which isolates applications (and much of the operating system) from the actual underlying systems hardware.

The main processor and the I/O processors are linked using a system bus, including Systems Product Division (SPD), and also Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI). Figure 2-6 summarizes the various modules of an iSeries hardware architecture.

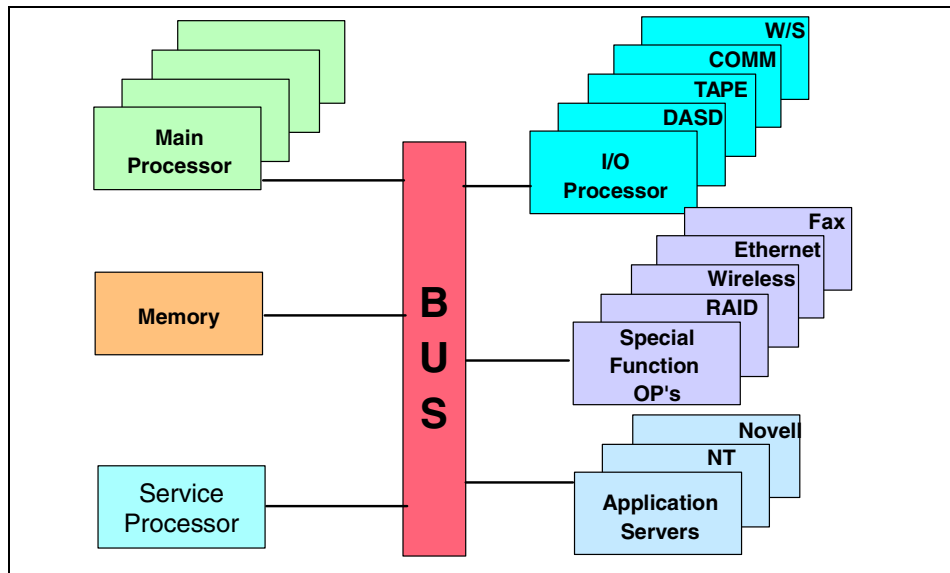


Figure 2-6 iSeries hardware design

Several architectural features of the iSeries server distinguish this system from other machines in the industry. These features include:

- ▶ Technology Independent Machine Interface
- ▶ Object-based systems design
- ▶ Single-level storage
- ▶ Integration of application programs into the operating system

For the latest news on iSeries TotalStorage products, refer to:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products\\_iSeries.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products_iSeries.html)

## Single-level storage

Single-level storage (SLS) is probably the most significant differentiator in a SAN solution implementation on an iSeries server, as compared to other systems such as z/OS, UNIX, and Windows. In OS/400, both the main storage (memory) and the secondary storage (disks) are treated as a very large virtual address space known as SLS.

Figure 2-7 compares the OS/400 SLS addressing with the way Windows or UNIX systems work, using the processor local storage. With 32-bit addressing, each process (job) has 4 GB of addressable memory. With 64-bit SLS addressing, over 18 million terabytes (18 exabytes) of addressable storage is possible. Because a single page table maps all virtual addresses to physical addresses, task switching is very efficient. SLS further eliminates the need for address translation, thus speeding up data access.

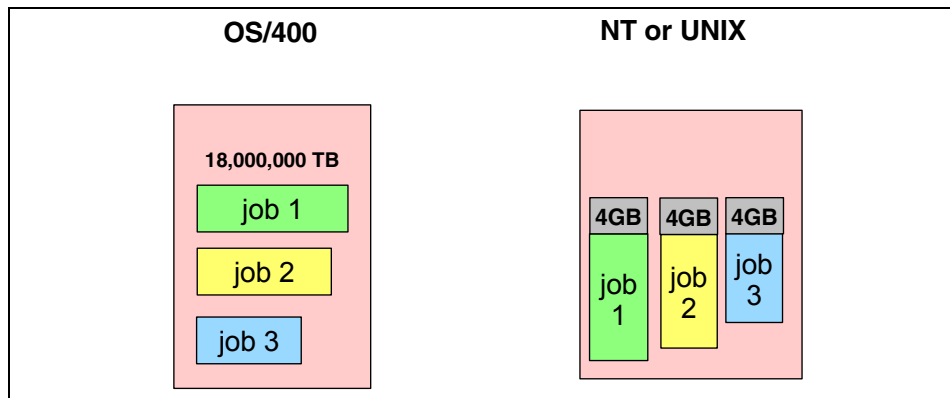


Figure 2-7 OS/400 versus NT or UNIX storage addressing

iSeries SAN support has rapidly expanded, and iSeries servers now support attachment to switched fabrics, and to most of IBM's SAN-attached storage products.

For more information, see the iSeries SAN Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/series/hardware/storage/san.html>

## 2.2.4 xSeries servers

Based on the reports of various analysts regarding growth in the Windows server market (both in the number and size of Windows servers), Windows will become the largest market for SAN solution deployment. More and more Windows servers will host mission-critical applications that will benefit from SAN solutions, such as disk and tape pooling, tape sharing, multipatching, and remote copy.

The processor-to-storage interfaces on xSeries servers (IBM's Intel®-based processors that support the Microsoft Windows operating system) are similar to those supported on UNIX servers, including SCSI and Fibre Channel.

For more information, see the xSeries SAN Web site at:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products\\_xseries.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products_xseries.html)

## 2.3 IBM storage products

IBM, as the industry's only complete storage solution provider, sells a complete set of SAN-attached storage devices. These products lead the industry in features, openness, performance, and versatility. As a general SAN tutorial, this book provides brief descriptions of IBM products. If you would like more in-depth information on the products in the IBM TotalStorage portfolio, refer to *The IBM TotalStorage Solutions Handbook*, SG24-5250.

## 2.4 IBM TotalStorage DS Family

IBM has brought together into one family a broad range of disk systems to help small to large-size enterprises select the right solutions for their needs. The new IBM TotalStorage DS family combines the high-performance heritage of the IBM TotalStorage DS6000 and DS8000 series enterprise servers with the newly enhanced IBM TotalStorage DS4000 series of mid-range systems (formerly called the FAST family) with newly introduced low-priced entry systems

This family is complemented by a full range of IBM TotalStorage capabilities such as advanced copy services, management tools, and virtualization services to help protect your data.

### 2.4.1 Entry-level disk systems

The new IBM TotalStorage DS300 and DS400 disk systems are designed to deliver advanced functionality at a breakthrough price. An exceptional solution for workgroup storage applications such as e-mail, file, print, and Web servers, as well as collaborative databases and remote boot for diskless servers.

#### **IBM TotalStorage DS300**

The IBM TotalStorage DS300 featuring the iSCSI host connection is an entry-level, cost-effective workgroup SAN storage for IBM eServer® xSeries® and BladeCenter™ servers. Designed to deliver advanced functionality at a breakthrough price, the DS300 provides an exceptional solution for workgroup



storage applications, such as file, print, and Web serving, as well as remote boot storage for diskless servers. Select configurations of the DS300 are part of the IBM Express portfolio, designed, developed, and priced to meet the specific needs of mid-sized businesses.

Table 2-1 IBM TotalStorage DS300 description

| Feature               | DS300  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Product               | DS300  |
| Machine/model         | 1701-2RD   |
| Platform support      | Windows 2000, Windows 2003, Linux, NetWare   |
| Host connectivity     | iSCSI  |
| SAN support           | Direct, Switched Ethernet  |
| Copy services         | FlashCopy®, Metro Mirror   |
| Availability features | Fault Tolerant, RAID, Redundant Hotswap Power, Hotswap drives, Dual controller, dual pathing drivers |
| Controller            | Dual Active 1-GB iSCSI RAID Controllers  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 256 MB, 1 GB (Single), 512 MB, 2 GB (Dual) - Battery Back-up   |
| RAID support          | 0,1, 5, 10, 50   |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 36 GB, 2 TB  |
| Drive interface       | Ultra320 iSCSI   |
| Drive support         | 36 GB, 73 GB, 146 GB 10 K RPM Disk Drives; 36 GB, 73 GB, 15 K RPM Disk Drives                        |
| Certifications        | Microsoft Windows MSCS   |

## IBM TotalStorage DS400

The IBM TotalStorage DS400 featuring the 2 Gb Fibre Channel host connection is an entry-level, cost-effective workgroup SAN storage for IBM **eServer®** xSeries® and BladeCenter™ servers. Designed to deliver advanced functionality at a breakthrough price, the DS400 provides an exceptional solution for workgroup storage applications, such as e-mail, file, print, and Web servers, as well as collaborative databases. Select configurations of the DS400 are part of

the IBM Express portfolio—designed, developed, and priced to meet the specific needs of mid-sized businesses.

*Table 2-2 IBM TotalStorage DS400 description*

| <b>Feature</b>        | <b>DS400</b>   |
|-----------------------|--|
| Product               | DS400  |
| Machine/model         | 1700-2RD   |
| Platform support      | Windows 2000, Windows 2003, Linux, NetWare, VMware   |
| Host connectivity     | Fibre Channel  |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   |
| Copy services         | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror  |
| Availability features | Fault Tolerant, RAID, Redundant Hotswap Power, Hotswap drives, Dual controller, dual pathing drivers |
| Controller            | Dual Active 2GB FC RAID Controllers  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 256 MB, 1 GB (Single), 512 MB, 2 GB (Dual) - Battery Back-up   |
| RAID support          | 0,1, 5, 10, 50   |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 36 GB, 5.8 TB with 2 EXP400 Expansion Units  |
| Drive interface       | Ultra320 SCSI  |
| Drive support         | 36 GB, 73GB, 146 GB 10 K RPM Disk Drives; 36 GB, 73 GB, 15 K RPM Disk Drives                         |
| Certifications        | Microsoft Windows MSCS   |

### **IBM TotalStorage DS4100**

Most businesses today must retain a growing volume of valuable data at an affordable price. With the DS4100 single controller you get entry-level storage shipping with 750 GB for an attractive price. A single controller supports up to 3.5 TB, and a dual controller supports up to 28 TB with the DS4000 EXP100. This general purpose or near-line application storage must keep up with demand. For small and medium-sized enterprises, predicting storage needs and controlling costs can be especially challenging as business grows.

The IBM TotalStorage DS4100 (formerly FAStT100) is designed to give cost-conscious enterprises an entry-level server that can help address storage consolidation and near-line application storage needs without undue expense, while leaving them room to grow. The single controller model supports up to 3.5 TB, while the dual controller model supports up to 28 TB of Serial ATA (SATA) physical disk storage with DS4000 EXP100—provided by up to 14 internal 250 GB disk drives inside the controller. The DS4100 can provide ample yet scalable storage without the cost of extra expansion units. This disk system is designed to help consolidate direct-attached storage into a centrally managed, shared, or storage area network (SAN) environment. With four Fibre Channel ports to attach to servers on a dual controller, the need for additional switches is reduced or eliminated for potential cost savings.

The DS4100 is designed to interoperate with IBM eServer™ pSeries® and IBM eServer xSeries® servers as well as with Intel® processor-based and UNIX®-based servers. To help make integration easy, IBM tests the DS4100 for interoperability with IBM servers, as well as with many other brands of servers and switches.

The DS4100 also includes management tools and automation features that can help lower administration costs. At the same time, the SATA-based DS4100 supports increased reliability and performance compared to older, non-redundant parallel Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) products.

## 2.4.2 Mid-range disk systems

IBM offers a full range of disk products within a single TotalStorage family to help small to large-size enterprises select the right solutions for their needs. This family includes the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server® (ESS), the FAStT products (now called the IBM TotalStorage DS4000 series), and new low-priced entry-level products called the IBM TotalStorage DS300 and DS400.

The DS4000 series (formerly FAStT) has been enhanced to complement the entry and enterprise disk system offerings with the DS4000 Storage Manager V9.10, enhanced remote mirror option, and the DS4100 option for larger capacity configurations, along with support for EXP100 serial ATA expansion units attached to DS4400s.

### **IBM TotalStorage DS4000**

The IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP710 Fibre Channel Storage Expansion Unit, available for selected DS4000 Midrange Disk Systems, expands the IBM TotalStorage DS4000 family by offering a new 14-bay, 2 Gbps, rack-mountable Fibre Channel (FC) drive enclosure. Enhancements include support for improved reliability and efficiency utilizing internal switch technology to attach to each disk drive within the EXP710 enclosure.

## IBM TotalStorage DS4100

Most businesses today must retain a growing volume of valuable data at an affordable price. With the DS4100 single controller you get entry-level storage shipping with 750 GB for an attractive price. The single controller supports up to 3.5 TB, and the dual controller supports up to 28 TB with the DS4000 EXP100. This general purpose or near-line application storage must keep up with demand. For small and medium-sized enterprises, predicting storage needs and controlling costs can be especially challenging as business grows.

The IBM TotalStorage DS4100 (formerly FAStT100) is designed to give cost-conscious enterprises an entry-level server that can help address storage consolidation and near-line application storage needs without undue expense, while leaving them room to grow. The single controller model supports up to 3.5 TB, while the dual controller model supports up to 28 TB of Serial ATA (SATA) physical disk storage with DS4000 EXP100—provided by up to 14 internal 250 GB disk drives inside the controller. The DS4100 can provide ample yet scalable storage without the cost of extra expansion units. This disk system is designed to help consolidate direct-attached storage into a centrally managed, shared, or storage area network (SAN) environment. With four Fibre Channel ports to attach to servers on the dual controller, the need for additional switches is reduced or eliminated for additional potential cost savings.

The DS4100 is designed to interoperate with IBM eServer™ pSeries® and IBM eServer xSeries® servers as well as with Intel® processor-based and UNIX®-based servers. To help make integration easy, IBM tests the DS4100 for interoperability with IBM servers, as well as with many other brands of servers and switches.

The DS4100 also includes management tools and automation features that can help lower administration costs. At the same time, the SATA-based DS4100 supports increased reliability and performance compared to older, non-redundant parallel Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) products.

*Table 2-3 IBM TotalStorage DS4100 description*

| <b>Feature</b> | <b>DS4100</b>                              |
|----------------|--|
| Product        | DS4100 (formerly FAStT100 Storage Servers) |
| Machine/model  | 1724-100/1SC                               |

| Feature               | DS4100  |
|-----------------------|---|
| Platform support      | Windows Server 2003, Windows 2000 Server and Adv.Server, Novell netWare 5.1 w/SP6, Red hat Enterprise Linux 3.0, SUSE LINUX Enterprise Server 8, VMWare ESX 2.1, AIX 5.1/5.2, HP-UX 11/11i, Solaris 8/9 |
| Host connectivity     | Fibre Channel   |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric  |
| Copy services         | FlashCopy option  |
| Availability features | Fault-tolerant, RAID, redundant power/cooling, hot-swap drives, dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver   |
| Controller            | Single/dual active 2 GB RAID controllers  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 256 MB, 512 MB  |
| RAID support          | 0, 1, 3, 5, 10  |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 250 GB, dual controller supports 28 TB with seven expansion units, single controller supports 3.5 TB  |
| Drive interface       | 2 Gb FC-AL  |
| Drive support         | 250 GB 7,200 rpm SATA disk drives   |
| Certifications        | Microsoft Clustering Services, IBM SAN Volume Controller 1.1.1  |

### IBM TotalStorage DS4300

The IBM TotalStorage DS4300 (formerly FAStT600) is a mid-level disk system that can scale to over eight terabytes of Fibre Channel disk using three EXP700s, over sixteen terabytes of Fibre Channel disk with the Turbo feature using seven EXP700s. It uses the latest in storage networking technology to provide an end-to-end 2 Gbps Fibre Channel solution. As part of the IBM DS4000 mid-range disk systems family, the Model 4300 with Turbo uses the same common storage management software and high-performance hardware design, providing clients with enterprise-like capabilities found in high-end models, but at a much lower cost.

The new DS4000 Storage Manager enables up to 256 logical volumes (LUNs) per storage partition, definition of array groups greater than 2 TB, and SCSI-3

Persistent Reservation. FlashCopy with VolumeCopy is a new function for a complete logical volume copy within the DS4000 is available on the DS4300 Turbo.

Coupled with the EXP100, the DS4300 and DS4300 with Turbo feature allows you to configure RAID-protected storage solutions of up to 28 TB to help provide economical and scalable storage for your rapidly growing application needs for limited access, data reference, and near-line storage.

The IBM TotalStorage DS4300 and the IBM TotalStorage DS4000 EXP700 have been issued a Certificate of Conformance by National Technical Systems, Inc., for conformance to Network Equipment-Building System requirements for Level 3 type 2 and 4 equipment (NEBS 3).

*Table 2-4 IBM TotalStorage DS4300 description*

| <b>Feature</b>        | <b>DS4300</b>  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Product               | DS4300 (formerly FASiT600 Storage Servers)   |
| Machine/model         | 1722-60U/6LU   |
| Platform support      | pSeries, xSeries, Windows 2000; optional support for AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, NetWare, Linux, VMWare   |
| Host connectivity     | Fibre Channel  |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   |
| Copy services         | Enhanced Remote Mirroring, FlashCopy, VolumeCopy (turbo option only)   |
| Availability features | Fault-tolerant, RAID, redundant power/cooling, hot-swap drives, single/dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver |
| Controller            | Single/dual active 2 GB RAID controllers; optional turbo feature   |
| Cache (min, max)      | 256 MB, 256 MB (single), 512 MB, 512 MB (base) 2 GB, 2 GB (turbo option)   |
| RAID support          | 0, 1, 3, 5, 10   |

| Feature             | DS4300  |
|---------------------|---|
| Capacity (min, max) | Base Single: 2 TB Base: 32 GB, 8.2 TB via EXP700 (FC), 250 GB, 28TB via EXP 100 (Serial ATA) Turbo option: 32 GB, 16.4 TB via EXP700/EXP710 (FC), 250 GB, 28 TB via EXP100 (Serial ATA) |
| Drive interface     | 2 Gb FC-AL  |
| Drive support       | 36.4 GB, 73.4 GB and 146.8 GB 10 K disk drives; 18.2 GB, 34.4 GB and 73.4 GB 15 K disk drives   |
| Certifications      | Microsoft RAID, Cluster and Data Center, HACMP, VERITAS Clustering  |

### IBM TotalStorage DS4400

The IBM TotalStorage DS4400 (formerly FAStT700) delivers superior performance with 2 Gbps Fibre Channel technology. The DS4400 is designed to offer investment protection with advanced functions and flexible features, and scales from 36 GB to over 32 TB to support the growing storage requirements created by e-business applications. It also offers advanced replication services to support business continuance, and is an effective disk system for any enterprise seeking performance without borders.

Table 2-5 IBM TotalStorage DS4400 description

| Feature           | DS4400  |
|-------------------|---|
| Product           | DS4400 (formerly FAStT700 Storage Servers)  |
| Machine/model     | 1742-1RU  |
| Platform support  | pSeries, select RS/6000® servers, xSeries, select Netfinity® servers, Windows NT, Windows 2000, netWare, Linux, AIX, HP-UX, Solaris, VMWare |
| Host connectivity | Fibre Channel   |
| SAN support       | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric  |
| Copy services     | Enhanced Remote Mirroring, FlashCopy, VolumeCopy  |

| Feature               | DS4400  |
|-----------------------|---|
| Availability features | Fault-tolerant, RAID, redundant power/cooling, hot-swap drives, dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver |
| Controller            | Dual active 2 GB RAID controllers   |
| Cache (min, max)      | 2 GB, 2 GB  |
| RAID support          | 0, 1, 3, 5, 10  |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 32 GB, 32 TB via EXP700/EXP710 (FC)   |
| Drive interface       | 2 Gb FC-AL  |
| Drive support         | 36.4 GB, 73.4 GB and 146.8 GB 10 K disk drives; 18.2 GB, 34.4 GB and 73.4 GB 15 K disk drives   |
| Certifications        | Microsoft RAID, Cluster and Data Center, NetWare Cluster, HACMP, VERITAS Clustering   |

### IBM TotalStorage DS4500

The IBM TotalStorage DS4500 (formerly FAStT900) delivers breakthrough disk performance and outstanding reliability for demanding applications in data-intensive computing environments. The DS4500 is designed to offer investment protection with advanced functions and flexible features. Designed for today's on demand business needs, it offers up to 32 TB of Fibre Channel disk storage capacity with the EXP700. It also offers advanced replication services to support business continuance and disaster recovery.

Coupled with the EXP100, it allows you to configure RAID-protected storage solutions of up to 56 TB to help provide economical and scalable storage for your rapidly growing application needs for limited access, data reference, and near-line storage.

Table 2-6 IBM TotalStorage DS4500 description

| Feature       | DS4500                                     |
|---------------|--|
| Product       | DS4500 (formerly FAStT900 Storage Servers) |
| Machine/model | 1742-90U                                   |



| Feature               | DS4500  |
|-----------------------|---|
| Platform support      | pSeries, select RS/6000 servers, xSeries, select netfinity servers, select Sun and HP UNIX servers and other Intel processor-based servers, Windows NT, Windows 2000, netWare, VMWare, Linux, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX |
| Host connectivity     | Fibre Channel   |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric  |
| Copy services         | Enhanced Remote Mirroring, FlashCopy, VolumeCopy  |
| Availability features | Fault-tolerant, RAID, redundant power/cooling, hot-swap drives, dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver   |
| Controller            | Dual active 2GB RAID controllers  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 2 GB, 2 GB  |
| RAID support          | 0, 1, 3, 5, 10  |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 32 GB, 32 TB via EXP700/EXP710 (FC)<br>250 GB, 56 TB via EXP100 (Serial ATA)  |
| Drive interface       | 2 Gb FC-AL  |
| Drive support         | 36.4 GB, 73.4 GB and 146.8 GB 10 K disk drives; 18.2 GB, 34.4 GB and 73.4 GB 15 K disk drives   |
| Certifications        | Microsoft RAID, Cluster, NetWare Cluster, HACMP, VERITAS Clustering   |

### 2.4.3 Enterprise disk systems

The IBM TotalStorage DS6000 series, along with the DS8000 series, delivers an enterprise storage continuum of systems with shared replication services and common management interfaces.

The DS6000 and DS8000 series systems are designed to help your company simplify its storage infrastructure, support business continuity, and optimize information lifecycle management.

## IBM TotalStorage DS6000

The IBM TotalStorage DS6000 series is a very affordable customer setup storage system designed to help reduce the costs and complexities associated with implementing a pooled storage solution. Its modular design and intuitive GUI configuration and management software can help companies quickly deploy and realize the system's benefits.

Table 2-7 IBM TotalStorage DS6000 description

| Feature               | DS6800   |
|-----------------------|--|
| Product               | IBM TotalStorage DS6800  |
| Machine/model         | 1750/511   |
| Platform support      | xSeries, iSeries, AS/400®, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, i5/OS™, OS/400, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Linux for S/390, z/OS, z/VM®, VSE/ESA™, TPF, Linux for iSeries, Linux for pSeries, Linux for Intel systems, OpenVMS, TRU64, NetWare, VMWare, Apple Macintosh OS X, Fujitsu Primepower |
| Host connectivity     | 1 Gb and 2 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON  |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   |
| Copy services         | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, as target for z/OS Global Mirror -Interoperable with ESS 800, ESS 750 and DS8000 Series   |
| Availability features | Fault Tolerant, dual redundant and hot-swap RAID Controller CARds, Battery Backup Units, Fibre Channel switch controllers, power supplies, non-disruptive hardware and software code load updates, multi-pathing device driver <sup>1</sup>  |
| Controller            | Dual active/active   |
| Cache (min, max)      | 4 GB   |
| RAID support          | 5, 10  |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 292 GB, 67.2 TB  |
| Drive interface       | 2 Gb Fibre Channel   |

|                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Feature</b> | <b>DS6800</b>                        |
| Drive support  | 73 GB 15 K, 146 GB 10 K, 300 GB 10 K |

## IBM TotalStorage DS8000

The IBM TotalStorage DS8000 series are high- performance, high-capacity storage systems designed to break through to an entirely new dimension in scalability, resiliency, and overall total value. Incorporating dual-clustered POWER5™ servers, new four-port 2 Gb Fibre Channel/ FICON host adapters, up to 256 GB cache, and new Fibre Channel disk drives, the DS8000 series is designed for outstanding performance.

Table 2-8 IBM TotalStorage DS8000 description

|                   | <b>DS8300</b>  | <b>DS8100</b>  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| Product           | IBM TotalStorage DS8000 Series   | IBM TotalStorage DS8000 Series   |
| Machine/model     | 2107/922/9A2   | 2107/921   |
| Platform support  | xSeries, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, i5/OS, OS/400, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Linux for S/390, z/OS, z/VM, VSE/ESA, TPF, Linux for iSeries, Linux for pSeries, Linux for Intel systems, OpenVMS, TRU64, NetWare, VMWare, Apple Macintosh OS X, Fujitsu Primepower, SGI IRIX | xSeries, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, i5/OS, OS/400, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Linux for S/390, z/OS, z/VM, VSE/ESA, TPF, Linux for iSeries, Linux for pSeries, Linux for Intel systems, OpenVMS, TRU64, NetWare, VMWare, Apple Macintosh OS X, Fujitsu Primepower, SGI IRIX |
| Host connectivity | 1 Gb and 2 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON, ESCON, SCSI   | 1 Gb and 2 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON, ESCON   |
| SAN support       | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   |
| Copy services     | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, z/OS Global Mirror. Interoperable with ESS 750 and DS6000 Series  | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, z/OS Global Mirror. Interoperable with ESS 750 and DS6000 Series  |

|                       | <b>DS8300</b>  | <b>DS8100</b>   |
|-----------------------|--|---|
| Availability features | Fault Tolerant, dual redundant and hot-swap RAID Controller Cards, Battery Backup Units, Fibre Channel switch controllers, power supplies, non-disruptive hardware and software code load updates, multi-pathing device driver | Fault Tolerant, dual redundant and hot-swap RAID Controller Cards, Battery Backup Units, Fibre Channel switch controllers, power supplies, non-disruptive hardware and software code load updates, multi-pathing device driver' |
| Controller            | Dual active/active   | Dual active/active  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 32/356 GB  | 16/128 GB   |
| RAID support          | 5, 10  | 5, 10   |
| Capacity (min, max)   | 1.1 TB, 192 TB   | 1.1 TB, 115 TB  |
| Drive interface       | 2 Gb Fibre Channel   | 2 Gb Fibre Channel  |
| Drive support         | 73 GB 15 K, 146 GB 10 K, 300 GB 10 K   | 73 GB 15 K, 146 GB 10 K, 300 GB 10 K  |

## **IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server**

To address the unique requirements of the on demand world, the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server® (ESS) helps set new standards for performance, automation, and integration, as well as for capabilities that support continuous data availability. This storage system also supports many advanced copy functions, which can be critical for increasing data availability by providing important disaster recovery and backup protection.

### ***Highly scalable enterprise storage***

The ESS Model 800, with an optional turbo feature, is designed to offer the performance, accessibility, security, and reliability needed to support 24x7 operations of the on demand world. Add the flexibility, ease of management, and price/performance that comes standard with the ESS Model 800, and you have both a world-class product, and a low total cost of ownership (TCO) as well.

### ***Mid-range disk systems***

The ESS Model 750 includes many of the functions and all the reliability of the ESS Model 800. The ESS Model 750 is designed to provide outstanding price/performance, scaling from 1.1 TB up to 4.6 TB of physical capacity.

Table 2-9 IBM TotalStorage ESS800 and ESS750 descriptions

| Feature               | ESS800  | ESS 750  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| Product               | Enterprise Storage Server   | Enterprise Storage Server  |
| Machine/model         | 2105/750  | 2105/750   |
| Platform support      | xSeries, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, i5/OS, OS/400, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, Dynix, OpenVMS, Tru64, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, NetWare, VMWare, Linux for S/390, z/OS, z/VM, OS/390, VM/ESA®, VSE/ESA, TPF, Linux for Intel systems, Fujitsu Primepower, SGI Origin IRIX | xSeries, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, i5/OS, OS/400, AIX, Solaris, HP-UX, Dynix, OpenVMS, Tru64, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, NetWare, VMWare, Linux for S/390, z/OS, z/VM, OS/390, VM/ESA, VSE/ESA, TPF, Linux for Intel systems, Fujitsu Primepower, SGI Origin IRIX |
| Host connectivity     | 1 Gb and 2 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON, ESCON, SCSI  | 1 Gb and 2 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON, ESCON   |
| SAN support           | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric  | Direct, FC-AL, Switched Fabric   |
| Copy services         | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, z/OS Global Mirror. Interoperable with DS8000 and DS6000   | FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, interoperable with DS8000 and DS6000  |
| Availability features | Fault-tolerant, RAID redundant power/cooling, hot-sw2ap drives, dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver   | Fault-tolerant, RAID redundant power/cooling, hot-sw2ap drives, dual controllers, concurrent microcode update capability, dual-pathing driver  |
| Controller            | SMB dual active; optional turbo feature   | SBM dual active  |
| Cache (min, max)      | 8 GB, 64 GB   | 8 GB, 16 GB  |
| RAID support          | 5, 10   | 5, 10  |

| Feature             | ESS800  | ESS 750  |
|---------------------|---|--|
| Capacity (min, max) | 582 GB, 55.9 TB (physical capacity)   | 1.1 TB, 4, 6 TB  |
| Drive interface     | SSA   | SSA  |
| Drive support       | 18.2 GB, 36.4 GB, 72.8 GB and 145.6 GB 10,000 rpm disk drives 18.2 GB, 36.4 GB and 72.8 GB 15,000 rpm disk drives | 72.8 GB, 145.6 GB (10,000 rpm)                                       |
| Certifications      | Microsoft RAID, Cluster and Data Center, GDPS®, HACMP, NetWare, Linux   | Microsoft RAID, Cluster and Data Center, GDPS, HACMP, NetWare, Linux |

**Note:** For detailed information relating to the IBM TotalStorage DS Series portfolio, visit the following Web site:

<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/index.html>

## 2.5 IBM Tape Storage Systems

As information technology budgets shrink, low-cost tape storage has become more attractive as a way to manage ever-increasing corporate data growth. From a single tape drive to libraries capturing petabytes of data, IBM TotalStorage Tape Drives, Tape Libraries, and Virtual Tape Servers offer a range of solutions to meet data management needs and to address growing business continuance concerns and regulatory requirements.

### 2.5.1 IBM Tape autoloaders

We give an overview tape autoloaders in the topics that follow.

#### 3581 Tape Autoloader

The IBM TotalStorage 3581 Tape Autoloader can provide an excellent solution for businesses looking for high-density and performance tape autoloader storage in constrained rack or desktop environments. The 3581 offers a single Ultrium 2 or 3 tape drive and storage for up to eight tape cartridges in a 2U form factor. Optional features are available and designed to help enable the operation of the autoloader as a small library.

Table 2-10 3581 Tape Autoloader description

| Feature                              | 3581  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Product                              | Tape Autoloader   |
| Machine model                        | 3581<br>L28 Ultrium 2<br>F28 Ultrium 2<br>L23 Ultrium 2<br>H23 Ultrium 2                                      |
| Product strengths                    | Open systems attach, multiplatform, high capacity, optional barcode reader                                    |
| Technology                           | Longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks               | Ultrium 2:8/512   |
| Number of drives                     | 1   |
| Max number of cartridges             | 8 - L28, F28<br>7 - L23, H23  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed | Ultrium 2: 200/400 GB   |
| Max system capacity compressed       | L23, H23:2.8 TB<br>L28, F28:3.2 TB  |
| Time to data                         | Ultrium 2: 49 seconds   |
| Interface                            | L28, F28-FC fabric<br>L23, LVD<br>H23, HVD  |
| SAN-ready                            | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT, Sun   |
| Supported platforms                  | xSeries, netfinity, iSeries, AS/400,<br>pSeries, RS/6000, Windows 2000,<br>Windows Server 2003, Sun HP, Linux |
| Media part number                    | Ultrium 2: 08L9870  |

### 3582 Tape Library

The IBM TotalStorage 3582 Tape Library can provide an outstanding automation solution for addressing the storage needs of small to medium-sized environments. With up to two tape drives and 24 tape cartridges, the 3582 Tape Library is designed to leverage the LTO technology to cost-effectively handle growing storage requirements.

Table 2-11 3582 Tape Library description

| Feature                              | 3582  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Product                              | Tape Library  |
| Machine model                        | 3582<br>L23 Ultrium 2<br>F23 Ultrium 2  |
| Product strengths                    | Open systems attach, multiplatform, scalable, high capacity, direct-to-SAN attach                       |
| Technology                           | Longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks               | Ultrium 2:8/512   |
| Number of drives                     | 1–2   |
| Max Number of Cartridges             | 24  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed | Ultrium 2: 200/400 GB   |
| Max system capacity compressed       | Ultrium 2:9.6 TB  |
| Time to data                         | Ultrium 2: 49 seconds   |
| Interface                            | LVD, HVD, FC fabric   |
| SAN-ready                            | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT, Sun   |
| Supported platforms                  | xSeries, netfinity, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Sun HP, Linux |
| Media Part number                    | Ultrium 2: 08L9870  |

### 3583 Tape Library

By fully leveraging advanced Linear Tape-Open (LTO) technology, the IBM TotalStorage 3583 Tape Library can provide an outstanding solution for cost-effectively handling a wide range of backup, archive, and disaster recovery data storage needs. The breakthrough reliability, capacity, and performance of LTO offers an excellent alternative to DLT, 8mm, 4mm, or 1/4-inch tape drives for streaming data applications such as backup.



Table 2-12 3583 Tape Library description

| Feature                              | 3583  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Product                              | Tape Library  |
| Machine model                        | 3583<br>L18-18 Carts<br>L36-36 Cards<br>L72-72 cARDS  |
| Product strengths                    | Open systems attach, multiplatform, scalable, high capacity, direct-to-SAN attach                       |
| Technology                           | Longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks               | Ultrium 2:8/512   |
| Number of drives                     | 1–6   |
| Max number of carthidges             | 72  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed | Ultrium 2: 200/400 GB   |
| Max system capacity compressed       | Ultrium 2:28.8 TB   |
| Time to data                         | Ultrium 2: 49 seconds   |
| Interface                            | LVD, HVD, FC fabric   |
| SAN-ready                            | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT, Sun   |
| Supported platforms                  | xSeries, netfinity, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Sun HP, Linux |
| Media Part number                    | Ultrium 2: 08L9870  |

## 7212 Storage Device Enclosure

The IBM TotalStorage 7212 Storage Enclosure is a versatile product that provides efficient and convenient storage expansion for IBM eServer iSeries and pSeries servers. The 7212 offers two models designed for either manual operation or automation. The 7212 can mount in 1 EIA unit of a standard 19-inch rack using an optional rack hardware kit, or it can be configured for desktop mounting.

Table 2-13 7212 Storage Device Enclosure description

| Feature                              | 7212-102  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Product                              | Storage Device Enclosure  |
| Machine model                        | 7212<br>102   |
| Product strengths                    | Rack-mountable<br>2-drive enclosure utilizes only 1U (1.75") of space                   |
| Technology                           | DDS, DVD, VXA   |
| Number of heads/tracks               | DDS/VXA: Rotating Drum  |
| Number of drives                     | 1-2   |
| Max number of cartridges             | 2   |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed | DDS-4: 20/40 GB<br>DAT72: 36/72 GB<br>VXA-2: 80/160 GB                                  |
| Max system capacity compressed       | 160 GB with two VXA-2 drives; 18.8 GB with two DVD-RAM drives                           |
| Time to data                         | VXA-2: 40 seconds<br>VXA: 40 SECONDS<br>DAT72: 50 seconds                               |
| Interface                            | SCSI-3 ULTRA<br>LVS/SE, 160/320   |
| Supported platforms                  | pSeries, RS/6000, iSeries, AS/400   |
| Media Part number                    | DDS-4: 59H4456<br>DAT72: 18P7912<br>VXA-2: 19P4876<br>SLR60: 19P4209<br>SLR100: 35L0980 |

### 7332 4mm DDS Tape Cartridge Autoloader

The 7332 family of 4mm tape cartridge autoloaders provide an externally attached cost-effective tape storage solution consisting of proven 4mm tape drive technology and a tape autoloader. The table-top unit, which is designed to attach to IBM RS/6000 servers and workstations, includes the same DDS 4mm tape drive used in 7206, robotics, and a cartridge magazine with slots for 4mm cartridges. It operates in streaming mode by using the autoloader to sequentially feed cartridges.

Table 2-14 3583 Tape Library description

| Feature                              | 3583  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Product                              | Tape Library  |
| Machine model                        | 3583<br>L18-18 Carts<br>L36-36 Cards<br>L72-72 cARDS  |
| Product strengths                    | Open systems attach, multiplatform, scalable, high capacity, direct-to-SAN attach                       |
| Technology                           | Longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks               | Ultrium 2:8/512   |
| Number of drives                     | 1–6   |
| Max number of carthidges             | 72  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed | Ultrium 2: 200/400 GB   |
| Max system capacity compressed       | Ultrium 2:28.8 TB   |
| Time to data                         | Ultrium 2: 49 seconds   |
| Interface                            | LVD, HVD, FC fabric   |
| SAN-ready                            | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT, Sun   |
| Supported platforms                  | xSeries, netfinity, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Sun HP, Linux |
| Media Part number                    | Ultrium 2: 08L9870  |

## 2.5.2 Tape drives

In this section we give an overview of tape drives.

### IBM 3592 Tape Drive

The IBM TotalStorage 3592 Tape Drive Model J1A is designed to provide high capacity and performance for storing mission-critical data. By offering significant advancements in capacity and data transfer rates, the 3592 Tape Drive helps address storage requirements that are often filled by two types of drives—those

that provide fast access for data access and those that provide high capacity for backups. The 3592 Tape Drive handles both types of use, helping simplify your tape infrastructure. Additionally, the 3592 Tape Drive Model J1A offers Write Once, Read Many (WORM) functionality, which is designed to help support data retention needs and applications requiring an audit trail.

*Table 2-15 3592 Tape Drive description*

| <b>Feature</b>                        | <b>3592</b>   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Product                               | 1/2" Tape Drive   |
| Machine model                         | 3592<br>J1A   |
| Product strengths                     | Multipurpose drive, capacity, performance, Write Once Read Many (WORM) support  |
| Technology                            | longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks                | 8/512   |
| Number of drives                      | 1   |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | 300/900 GB<br>300/900 GB WORM<br>60/180 GB<br>60/180 GB WORM                    |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | 40/120 MB/sec   |
| Time to Data                          | Cartridge dependent   |
| Interface                             | FC, ESCON, FICON, 2Gb FICON   |
| SAN-ready                             | pSeries, iSeries, RS/6000, Sun, HP, Windows NT, Linux, Windows 2000             |
| Supported platforms                   | iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, Linux, Windows 2000, Sun, HP |
| Media part number                     | 18P7534   |

### **IBM 3590 Tape Drive**

The IBM TotalStorage 3590 Tape Drive provides high levels of performance and reliability and exemplifies IBM's continued leadership in storage products. Since its first shipment in September 1995, it has met with wide marketplace

acceptance. Over 100,000 3590 Tape Drives are installed in both IBM and non-IBM systems across industry sectors.

Table 2-16 3590 1/2" Tape Drive description

| Feature                               | 3590  |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Product                               | 1/2" Tape Drive   |
| Machine model                         | 3590<br>J1A   |
| Product strengths                     | Multipurpose drive, capacity, performance, Write Once Read Many (WORM) support  |
| Technology                            | longitudinal Serpentine   |
| Number of heads/tracks                | 8/512   |
| Number of drives                      | 1   |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | 300/900 GB<br>300/900 GB WORM<br>60/180 GB<br>60/180 GB WORM                    |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | 40/120 MB/sec   |
| Time to data                          | Cartridge dependent   |
| Interface                             | FC, ESCON, FICON, 2 Gb FICON  |
| SAN-ready                             | pSeries, iSeries, RS/6000, Sun, HP, Windows NT, Linux, Windows 2000             |
| Supported platforms                   | iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390, Linux, Windows 2000, Sun, HP |
| Media part number                     | 18P7534   |

### IBM 3580 Tape Drive

The IBM TotalStorage 3580 model L33 Tape Drive is an external drive incorporating the third and latest generation of IBM LTO® technology. This is an external stand-alone or rack-mountable unit, similar to previous models of the 3580, and is the entry point for the family of IBM Ultrium tape products. The 3580 Tape Drive provides an excellent migration path from digital linear tape (DLT or

SDLT), 1/4-in., 4mm, or 8mm tape drives. The 3580 model L33 can read and write LTO Ultrium 2 Data Cartridges and read LTO Ultrium 1 Data Cartridges.

*Table 2-17 3580 Tape Drive description*

| <b>Feature</b>                        | <b>3580</b>  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Product                               | Tape Drive   |
| Machine model                         | 3580<br>L33 Ultrium 3<br>L23 Ultrium 2<br>H23 Ultrium 2  |
| Product strengths                     | Open systems attach, high capacity, fast data transfer rate, desktop footprint                           |
| Technology                            | Longitudinal Serpentine  |
| Number of heads/tracks                | Ultrium 3: 16/704<br>Ultrium 2: 8/512  |
| Number of drives                      | 1  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | Ultrium 3: 400 GB<br>Ultrium 2: 200/400 GB   |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | Ultrium 3: 80 MB/sec<br>Ultrium 2: 35/70 MB/sec  |
| Time to data                          | Ultrium 3: 49 seconds<br>Ultrium 2: 49 seconds   |
| Interface                             | L33, L23, LVD, H23, HVD  |
| SAN-ready                             | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT, Sun  |
| Supported platforms                   | xSeries, Netfinity, iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Sun, HP, Linux |
| Media part number                     | Ultrium 3: 24R1922<br>Ultrium 2: 08L9870   |

### **IBM 7205 External SDLT Tape Drive Model 550**

The IBM 7205 Model 550 delivers fast and dependable tape backup, restore, and archive functions in a pSeries and RS/6000 environment. This stand-alone digital linear tape drive is an excellent alternative to other tape technologies in the industry.

Table 2-18 7205 External SDLT Tape Drive Model 550 description

| Feature                                  | 7205  |
|--|---|
| Product                                  | SDLT Drive<br>Tape Drive                        |
| Machine model                            | 7205<br>550                                     |
| Product strengths                        | Cost-effective<br>save/restore/archive solution |
| Technology                               | Longitudinal Serpentine                         |
| Number of heads/tracks                   | 8/536   |
| Number of drives                         | 1   |
| Max number of cartridges                 | 1   |
| Cartridge capacity<br>native/compressed  | 160/320 GB                                      |
| Max drive data rate<br>native/compressed | 16/32 MB/sec                                    |
| Time to data                             | 70 seconds                                      |
| Interface                                | SCSI-2 F/W, Diff PCI, Ultra2 SCSI LVD           |
| SAN-ready                                | pSeries, RS/6000                                |
| Supported platforms                      | pSeries, RS/6000                                |
| Media<br>part number                     | 35L1119   |

## IBM 7206 External Tape Drive

The 7206 family of tape drives are externally attached streaming tape drives designed for use with IBM RS/6000 workstations and servers.

Table 2-19 7206 External Tape Drive description

| Feature       | 7206                              | 7206-VX2                |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Product       | 4mm DDS-4<br>4mm Gen 5 (DAT72)    | 8mm VXA-2 Tape<br>Drive |
| Machine model | 7206<br>220-DDS4<br>336-DDS Gen 5 | 7206<br>VX2             |

| Feature                               | 7206                                | 7206-VX2   |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| Product strengths                     | Cost-effective streaming tape drive | Low-cost, high-capacity VXA-2 technology           |
| Technology                            | Helical Scan                        | Helical Scan                                       |
| Number of heads/tracks                | Rotating Drum                       | Rotating Drum                                      |
| Number of drives                      | 1                                   | 1  |
| Max number of cartridges              | 1                                   | 1  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | 220: 20/40 GB<br>336: 36/72 GB      | 20/40 GB<br>59/118 GB<br>80/160 GB                 |
| Max system capacity compressed        | 220: 40 GB<br>336: 72 GB            | 160 GB   |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | 220: 2/6 MB/sec<br>336: 3/6 MB/sec  | 6/12 GB/sec  |
| Time to data                          | 50 seconds                          | 50 seconds   |
| Interface                             | SCSI-2 F/W SE, LVD/SE               | SCSI-3 ULTRA, LVD/SE, 160/320                      |
| SAN-ready                             | pSeries, RS/6000                    | pSeries, RS/6000, iSeries, AS/400                  |
| Supported platforms                   | pSeries, RS/6000                    | pSeries, RS/6000, iSeries, AS/400                  |
| Media part number                     | DDS-4: 59H4456<br>DAT72: 18P7912    | 19P4876 (230M),<br>19P4877 (170M)<br>19P4878 (62M) |

### IBM 7207 External Tape Drive

The 7207 provides affordable backup, archival storage, and data interchange for iSeries/AS400 and pSeries/RS6000 systems.

Table 2-20 7207 External Tape Drive description

| Feature | 7207   |
|---------|--|
| Product | SLR (QIC)<br>Compatible External<br>Tape Drive |



| Feature                               | 7207   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Machine model                         | 7207<br>122<br>330                                   |
| Product strengths                     | Backward read/write compatible with iSeries Internal |
| Technology                            | SLR (QIC format)                                     |
| Number of heads/tracks                | 1/1  |
| Number of drives                      | 1  |
| Max number of cartridges              | 1  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | 122: 4/8 GB<br>330: 30/60 GB                         |
| Max system capacity compressed        | 122: 4/8 GB<br>330: 30/60 GB                         |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | 122: .38/.76 MB/sec<br>330: 4/8 MB/sec               |
| Time to data                          | 122: 85 seconds<br>330: 50 seconds                   |
| Interface                             | SCSI-2 SE, ULTRA, LVD/SE, 160/320                    |
| SAN-ready                             | iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS/6000                    |
| Supported platforms                   | iSeries, AS/400, pSeries, RS6000                     |
| Media Part number                     | 122: 59H3660<br>330: 19P4209                         |
| Interface                             | SCSI-2 SE, ULTRA, LVD/SE, 160/320                    |

### IBM 7208 Model 345 External 8mm Tape Drive

The IBM 7208 8mm tape drive provides an excellent solution to users of 8mm tape who require a larger capacity or higher performance tape backup. The IBM 7208 tape drive is based on enhanced 8mm Mammoth tape drive technology, and delivers fast and dependable save and restore functions on both pSeries and iSeries servers.

Table 2-21 7208 Model 345 External 8mm Tape Drive description

| Feature                                  | 7208   |
|--|--|
| Product                                  | 8mm Mammoth Tape Drive                           |
| Machine model                            | 7208<br>345-Mammoth-2                            |
| Product strengths                        | High-performance<br>8mm technology               |
| Technology                               | Helical Scan                                     |
| Number of heads/tracks                   | Rotating Drum                                    |
| Number of drives                         | 1  |
| Max number of cartridges                 | 1  |
| Cartridge capacity<br>native/compressed  | 60/150 GB  |
| Max system capacity<br>compressed        | 150 GB   |
| Max drive data rate<br>native/compressed | 12/30 MB/sec                                     |
| Time to data                             | 93 seconds                                       |
| Interface                                | SCSI-2 Ultra2 LVD                                |
| SAN-ready                                | pSeries, RS/6000, iSeries, AS/400,<br>Windows NT |
| Supported platforms                      | pSeries, RS/6000, iSeries, AS/400                |
| Media<br>part number                     | 18P6485-60 GB                                    |

### IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server

As an option to the 3494 library, IBM offers a product called the IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server (VTS). Because of the way z/OS and its predecessors organize tape storage, ordinarily only a single volume may be stored on a single tape. In some environments, this can result in the extremely inefficient usage of tape capacity. The VTS option for the 3594 library replaces the control units that would usually be used to communicate with the tape drives. It stores the data received from the host in internal disk storage, and then stores that data to tape in a manner that results in the tape being full, or nearly so. This greatly reduces the number of tape cartridges required for data backups.

The IBM TotalStorage 3494 Virtual Tape Server (VTS) is an enterprise tape solution designed to enhance performance and provide the capacity required for today's backup requirements. The adoption of this solution can help reduce batch processing time, total cost of ownership, and management cost. A VTS Peer-to-Peer (PtP) configuration can provide redundancy for greater disaster tolerance and help fulfill business continuity requirements.

Table 2-22 3494-VTS description

| Feature                               | 3494-VTS   |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Product                               | Virtual Tape Server  |
| Machine model                         | 3494<br>B10, B20   |
| Product strengths                     | Virtuالتape, fastaccess peer-to-peer copy                  |
| Technology                            | Disk: Emulated 3490E Tape: 3592, 3590<br>1/2"              |
| Number of drives                      | 62-256 (virtual)   |
| Max number of cartridges              | 500,000 (virtual volumes)                                  |
| Cartridge capacity native/compressed  | Drive dependent  |
| Max system capacity compressed        | Disk: Up to 5.2 TB<br>Tape: 5616 TB                        |
| Max drive data rate native/compressed | VTS: Drive dependent                                       |
| Time to data                          | VTS: 1–3 seconds if data in VTS Cache                      |
| Interface                             | Ultra SCSI, ESCON, FICON                                   |
| SAN-ready                             | pSeries, RS/6000, Windows NT,<br>Windows 2000, Sun         |
| Supported platforms                   | pSeries, RS/6000, zSeries, S/390,<br>Windows 2000, Sun, HP |
| Media part number                     | 18P7534<br>05H4434<br>X: 05H3188                           |

**Note:** For detailed information relating to the IBM Tape Storage Systems portfolio, go to the following Web site:

<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/tape/index.html>

## 2.6 Storage virtualization in the SAN

The Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) defines storage virtualization as:

The act of integrating one or more (back-end) services or functions with additional (front-end) functionality for the purpose of providing useful abstractions. Typically virtualization hides some of the back-end complexity, or adds or integrates new functionality with existing back-end services. Examples of virtualization are the aggregation of multiple instances of a service into one virtualized service, or to add security to an otherwise insecure service. Virtualization can be nested or applied to multiple layers of a system.

Or, to put it in more practical terms, storage virtualization is the pooling of physical storage from multiple network storage devices into what appears to be a single storage device that is managed from a central console.

Storage virtualization techniques are becoming increasingly more prevalent in the IT industry today. Storage virtualization forms one of several layers of virtualization in a storage network, and can be described as the abstraction from physical volumes of data storage to a logical view of data storage.

This abstraction can be made on several levels of the components of storage networks and is not limited to the disk subsystem. Storage virtualization separates the representation of storage to the operating system (and its users) from the actual physical components. Storage virtualization has been represented and taken for granted in the mainframe environment for many years.

The SAN is making it easier for customers to spread their IT systems out geographically; but even in networks, different types of servers that use different operating systems do not get the full benefit of sharing storage. Instead, the storage is partitioned to each different type of server, which creates complex management and inefficient use of storage. When storage must be added, applications are often disrupted. At the same time, the reduced cost of storage and the technology of storage networks, with faster data transfer rates, have enabled customers to use increasingly sophisticated applications, such as digital media. This has caused even greater complexity and difficulty of management as

the amount of storage required grows at unprecedented rates. The IBM storage strategy introduces ways to eliminate these problems.

## 2.6.1 Block virtualization at the LUN level

Virtualization manages multiple storage devices and volumes as groups. These groups are managed independently of the physical layout of the storage. Because of this independence, new disk systems can be added to a storage network, and data can be migrated to them without causing disruption to applications that use the storage.

Since the storage is no longer controlled by individual servers, it can be used by any server as needed. Capacity can be added or removed on demand without affecting the application servers. Storage virtualization simplifies storage management and reduces the cost of managing the SAN environment.

## Levels of storage virtualization

We will define the different levels that virtualization can be achieved at in a storage network, as illustrated in Figure 8.

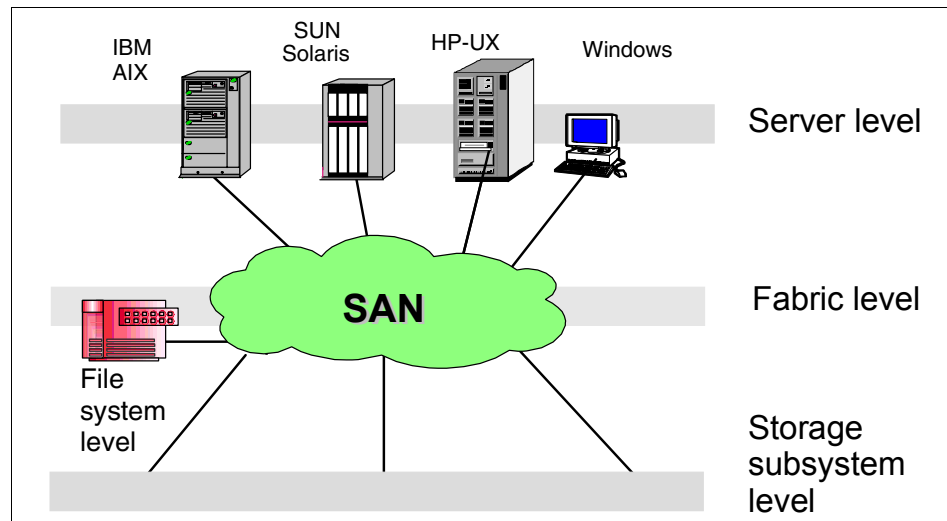


Figure 8 Levels that storage virtualization can be applied at

### Server level

Abstraction at the server level is by means of the logical volume management of the operating systems on the servers. At first sight, increasing the level of

abstraction on the server seems well suited for environments without storage networks, but this can be vitally important in storage networks too.

### **Fabric level**

At the fabric level, virtualization can enable the independence of storage pools from heterogeneous servers. The SAN fabric would be zoned to allow the virtualization appliances to see the storage subsystems, and for the servers to see the virtualization appliances. Servers would not be able to directly see or operate on the storage subsystems.

### **Storage subsystem level**

Disk storage systems can provide some level of virtualization already by subdividing disks into smaller virtual drives. Conversely, more storage devices could be consolidated together to form one large virtual drive. RAID subsystems are an example of virtualization at the storage level. Storage virtualization can take this to the next level by enabling the presentation and the management of disparate storage systems.

### **File system level**

Virtualization at the file system level provides the highest level of virtual storage. It can also provide the highest benefit, because it is data (not volumes) that is to be shared, allocated, and protected.

## **2.6.2 Server, fabric, storage subsystem or file system virtualization**

As we stated, virtualization can be implemented at any of these levels. The IBM strategy is to move the storage device management intelligence out of the server, reducing the dependency of having to implement specialized software, like Logical Volume Managers (LVM), at the server level. We also intend to reduce the requirement for intelligence at the storage subsystem level, which will decrease the dependency on having to implement intelligent storage subsystems.

By implementing at a fabric level, storage control is moved into the network, which gives the opportunity to all for virtualization, and at the same time reduces complexity by providing a single view of storage. The storage network can be used to leverage all kinds of services across multiple storage devices, including virtualization.

By implementing at a file system level, file details are effectively stored on the storage network instead of in individual servers. This design means the file system intelligence is available to all application servers. Doing so provides immediate benefits: A single namespace and a single point of management. This eliminates the need to manage files on a server-by-server basis.

## 2.6.3 Virtualization models

In-band and out-of-band models can be drawn for storage virtualization, as illustrated in Figure 9. These models are not mutually exclusive. In many environments a combination of both may be desired.

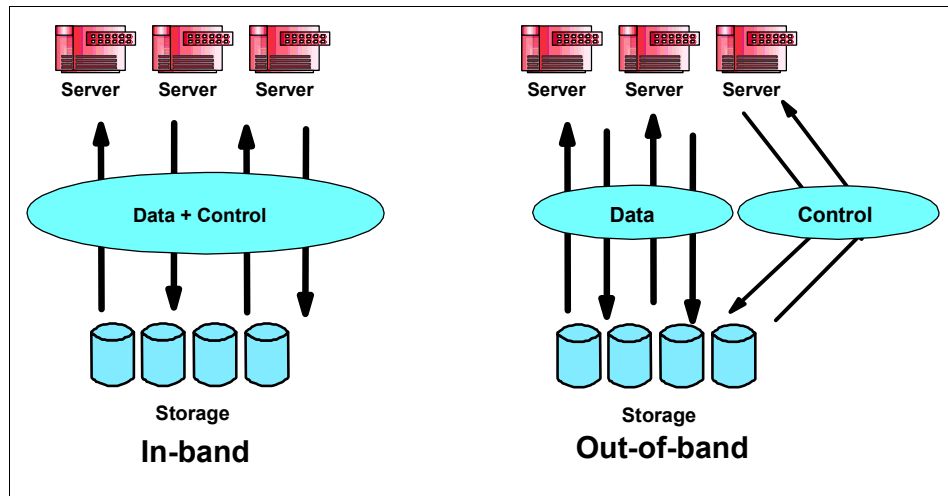


Figure 9 In-band and out-of-band models

### In-band

When we implement an in-band virtual storage network, both data and control flow over the same path. Levels of abstraction exist in the data path, and storage can be pooled under the control of a domain manager. In general, in-band solutions are perceived to be simpler to implement, especially because they do not require special software to be installed in servers (other than conventional multi-pathing software). In-band solutions can also provide caching and advanced functions within the storage network. This can help to improve the performance of existing disk systems and can extend their useful life, and reduce the cost of new storage capacity by enabling the use of lower function, lower cost disk systems, without the loss of performance.

Other advantages include:

- ▶ Ability to offload function from the host
- ▶ Providing storage management for the SAN
- ▶ Performing performance optimizations in the data path
- ▶ Supporting host systems not in a cluster
- ▶ Supporting multiple heterogeneous hosts
- ▶ Integrating well with storage management software
- ▶ Releasing the customer from a particular vendor's storage

- ▶ Integrating with storage to create a better management picture
- ▶ Offering excellent scalability

The SAN Volume Controller is an example of an in-band solution and is reviewed in 2.6.4, “IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller” on page 64.

### **Out-of-band**

In an out-of-band implementation, the data flow is separated from the control flow. This is achieved by separating the data and meta-data (data about the data) into different places. Out-of-band virtualization involves moving all mapping and locking tables to a separate server (the meta-data controller) that contains the meta-data of the files.

In an out-of-band solution the servers request authorization to data from the meta-data controller, which grants it, handles locking, and so on. Once they are authorized, servers access the data directly without any meta-data controller intervention. Once a client has obtained access to a file, all I/O will go directly over the SAN to the storage devices. For many operations, the meta-data controller does not even intervene.

Separating the flow of control and data in this manner allows the I/O to use the full bandwidth that a SAN provides, while control could go over a separate network or routes in the SAN that are isolated for this purpose. This results in performance that is nearly equal to local file system performance with all of the benefits and added functionality that come with an out-of-band implementation.

Other advantages include:

- ▶ Releasing the customer from a particular vendor’s storage
- ▶ Providing storage management for the SAN
- ▶ Offering excellent scalability
- ▶ Offloading host processing
- ▶ Supporting storage management from multiple vendors
- ▶ Integrating well with storage management software
- ▶ Supporting multiple heterogeneous hosts
- ▶ Relatively low overhead in the data path

The SAN File System is an example of an out-of-band virtualization implementation and is reviewed in 2.6.5, “IBM TotalStorage SAN File System” on page 66.

## **2.6.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller**

SANs enable companies to share homogeneous storage resources across the enterprise. But for many companies, information resources are spread over a



variety of locations and storage environments, often with products from different vendors, who supply everything from mainframes to laptops. To achieve higher utilization of resources, companies now need to share their storage resources from all their environments, regardless of the vendor. While storage needs rise rapidly, and companies operate on lean budgets and staffing, the best solution is one that leverages the investment already made and that provides growth when needed. SVC contributes towards this goal of a solution that can help strengthen existing SANs by increasing storage capacity, efficiency, uptime, administrator productivity, and functionality.

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller (SVC) is designed to:

- ▶ Provide a centralized control point for managing an entire heterogeneous SAN, including storage volumes from disparate vendor devices.
- ▶ Help optimize existing IT investments by virtualizing storage and centralizing management.
- ▶ Reduce downtime for planned and unplanned outages, maintenance, and backups.
- ▶ Increase storage capacity utilization, uptime, administrator productivity, and efficiency.
- ▶ Provide a single set of advanced copy and backup services for multiple storage devices.

### **Centralized point of control**

SVC is designed to help IT administrators manage storage volumes from their storage area networks (SANs). It helps combine the capacity of multiple storage controllers, including storage controllers from other vendors, into a single resource, with a single view of the volumes.

### **Reduction of downtime**

SVC is designed to provide IT administrators with the ability to migrate storage from one device to another without taking the storage offline, and allow them to better reallocate, scale, upgrade and back up storage capacity without disrupting applications.

### **Improved resource utilization**

SVC is designed to help increase storage capacity and uptime, as well as administrator productivity and efficiency, while leveraging existing storage investments through virtualization and centralization of management.

## **A single, cost-effective set of advanced copy services**

SVC is designed to support advanced copy services across all attached storage, regardless of the intelligence of the underlying controllers.

## **SVC architecture**

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller (SVC) is based on the COMmodity PArts Storage System (COMPASS), Compass architecture developed at the IBM Almaden Research Center. The overall goal of the Compass architecture is to create storage subsystem software applications that require minimal porting effort to leverage a new hardware platform. The approach is to minimize the dependency on unique hardware, and to allow exploitation of, or migration to, new SAN interfaces simply by plugging in new commodity adapters.

## **2.6.5 IBM TotalStorage SAN File System**

IBM TotalStorage SAN File System is a common SAN-wide file system that permits centralization of management and improved storage utilization at the file level. The IBM TotalStorage SAN File System is configured in a high-availability configuration based on xSeries with clustering for the metadata controllers, providing redundancy and fault tolerance.

The IBM TotalStorage SAN File System is designed to provide policy-based storage automation capabilities for provisioning and data placement, non-disruptive data migration, and a single point of management for files on a storage network.

SANs have gained wide acceptance. Interoperability issues between components from different vendors connected by a SAN fabric have received attention and have mostly been resolved, but the problem of managing the data stored on a variety of devices from different vendors is still a major challenge to the industry.

### **Data sharing in a SAN**

The term *data sharing* is used somewhat loosely by users and some vendors. It is sometimes interpreted to mean the replication of files or databases to enable two or more users, or applications, to concurrently use separate copies of the data. The applications concerned may operate on different host platforms.

Data sharing may also be used to describe multiple users accessing a single copy of a file. This could be called “true data sharing”. In a homogeneous server environment, with appropriate application software controls, multiple servers may access a single copy of data stored on a consolidated storage subsystem. If attached servers are heterogeneous platforms (for example, a mix of UNIX and

Windows), sharing of data between such unlike operating system environments is complex. This is due to differences in file systems, access controls, data formats, and encoding structures.

### **SAN File System architecture**

The IBM TotalStorage SAN File System architecture makes it possible to bring the benefits of the existing mainframe system-managed storage (SMS) to the SAN environment. Features such as policy-based allocation, volume management, and file management have long been available on IBM mainframe systems. However, the infrastructure for such centralized, automated management has been lacking in the open systems world of Linux, Windows, and UNIX. On conventional systems, storage management is platform dependent. IBM TotalStorage SAN File System provides a single, centralized point of control to better manage files and data, and is platform independent. Centralized file and data management dramatically simplifies storage administration and lowers TCO.

The SAN File System is a common file system specifically designed for storage networks. By managing file details (via the metadata server) on the storage network instead of in individual servers, the SAN File System design moves the file system intelligence into the storage network where it can be available to all application servers. The file level virtualization aggregation provides immediate benefits: A single global namespace and a single point of management. This eliminates the need to manage files on a server-by-server basis. A global namespace is the ability to access any file from any client system using the same name.

The SAN File System automates routine and error-prone tasks such as file placement, and handles out of space conditions. The IBM TotalStorage SAN File System will allow true heterogeneous file sharing—where read and write on the exact same data can be done by different operating systems.

## **2.7 Network Attached Storage**

A Network Attached Storage (NAS) device is a server that is dedicated to nothing more than file sharing. NAS does not provide any of the activities that a server in a server-centric system typically provides, such as e-mail, authentication, or file management. NAS allows more hard disk storage space to be added to a network that already utilizes servers without shutting them down for maintenance and upgrades. With a NAS device, storage is not an integral part of the server. Instead, in this storage-centric design, the server still handles all of the processing of data, but a NAS device delivers the data to the user. A NAS device does not need to be located within the server but can exist anywhere in a LAN

and can be made up of multiple networked NAS devices. These units communicate to a host using Ethernet and file-based protocols. This is in contrast to the disk units discussed earlier, which use Fibre Channel protocol and block-based protocols to communicate.

Each type of storage has advantages and disadvantages. SAN-attached storage generally has better performance and more solid security. NAS storage is less expensive for servers to implement (Ethernet adapters are much less expensive than Fibre Channel adapters), the same data can be more easily shared between servers, and virtually any end-user on an Ethernet network can obtain files from a NAS box. The security of the data can also be implemented at a far more granular level (each file can be assigned to specific users).

In an effort to bridge the two worlds and to open up new configuration options for customers, IBM sells a NAS unit that acts as a gateway between IP-based users and SAN-attached storage. This allows you to connect the storage device of choice (an ESS, for example) and share it between your high-performance database servers (attached directly through Fibre Channel) and your end users (attached through IP) who do not have performance requirements nearly as strict.

NAS is an ideal solution for serving files stored on the SAN to end users. It would be impractical and expensive to equip end users with Fibre Channel adapters. NAS allows those users to access your storage through the IP-based network that they already have.

### **IBM TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500**

The IBM TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500 is IBM's next generation "Enterprise Class" NAS offering. This innovative NAS device is designed to connect clients and servers on an IP network to Fibre Channel storage, to help efficiently bridge the gap between LAN storage needs and SAN storage capacities.

The NAS Gateway 500 offers:

- ▶ Installation - Offers an installation wizard designed to help simplify installation and setup
- ▶ Increased access - Designed to allow IP clients and servers to access SAN devices without each server or client being directly connected by a Fibre Channel
- ▶ Flexibility - Enables cross-platform file sharing (CIFS (Microsoft Windows), NFS (UNIX)) that can help reduce network complexity and expense, and allow data to be shared across the organization
- ▶ Interoperability - Supports attachment to non-IBM storage via the IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller

- ▶ Scalability - Supports nondisruptive capacity increases up to 224 TB of direct attached or SAN-attached physical storage
- ▶ Manageability - Includes integrated system diagnostics and management tools, which are designed to help minimize downtime
- ▶ High performance - Optimized for network file serving and storage requirements
- ▶ Redundancy - Offers redundant fans, power supplies, disk drive, adapters, processors, and clustered nodes
- ▶ Copy services - Provides extensive on-board and out-board disaster recovery data protection features

Table 2-23 TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500 description

| Feature                  | IBM TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500   |
|--------------------------|--|
| Model                    | 5198-001   |
| Scalability              | Up to 224 TB of SAN-attached physical storage  |
| Nodes                    | Single or dual node configurations<br>Dual-node configuration offers active/active clustering  |
| Processors               | 1,45 GHz POWER4™+ processor<br>(recordable as 2-way or 4-ways per node)  |
| Network protocol support | NFS V2 and V3 (UNIX and Linux), CIFS (Windows), HTTP, FTP, NTP, SNMP, SMTP   |
| Operating system         | AIX 5L™ 5.2B   |
| Performance              | 276 MB/sec CIFS 68,444 I/Os per sec<br>NFS V3  |
| PCI Slots Available      | 6/none   |
| Network connectivity     | Eight (10/100/1000) Ethernet ports (copper and fiber) for file serving or service management on PCI adapters<br>Eight (2Gbps) Fibre Channel ports for external tape and storage attachment |
| ECC SDRAM memory (max)   | 16 GB with 2-way processor and 32 GB with 4-way processor per node   |

| Feature                      | IBM TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500  |
|------------------------------|---|
| Data protection              | On-board data protection using snapshots to create copies and snap rollback to restore backup copies of snapped data. Out-board remote mirroring over IP networks or SAN networks to provide copies of data at remote disaster recovery sites |
| Redundancy/high availability | Redundant, hot swappable disk bays, power supplies, fans, and PCI adapters  |
| Backup                       | External tape (SCSI or FC)  |
| RAID levels                  | SAN disk dependent  |
| Systems management           | NAS WebSM, SMIT, SNMP V3, NAS CLI   |
| Storage management           | IBM Tivoli® Storage Resource manager (ITSRM) agent, IBM Tivoli Storage manager client and storage agent, IBM Tivoli SAN Manager (ITSANM) agent; additional third-party products supported   |

**Note:** For detailed information relating to the IBM Network Attached Storage (NAS) portfolio, go to the following Web site:

<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/nas/index.html>



## SAN fabrics and connectivity

A Fibre Channel SAN employs a fabric to connect devices. A fabric can be as simple as a single cable connecting two devices. However, the term is most often used to describe a more complex network to connect servers and storage utilizing switches, directors, and gateways.

Independent from the size of the fabric, a good SAN environment starts with good planning, and always includes an up-to-date map of the SAN.

Some of the items to consider are:

- ▶ How many ports do I need now?
- ▶ How fast will I grow in two years?
- ▶ Are my servers and storage in the same building?
- ▶ Do I need long distance solutions?
- ▶ Do I need redundancy for every server or storage?
- ▶ How high are my availability needs and expectations?
- ▶ Will I connect multiple platforms to the same fabric?

We show a high-level view of a fabric in Figure 3-1 on page 72.

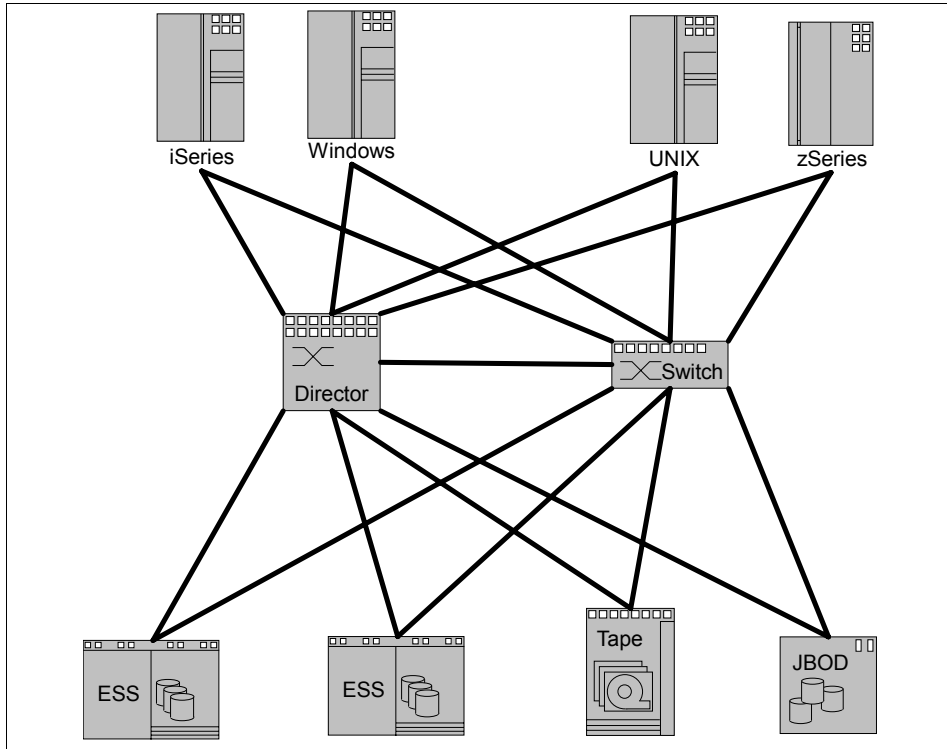


Figure 3-1 High-level view of a fabric



## 3.1 The SAN environment

Historically, interfaces to storage consisted of parallel bus architectures (such as SCSI and IBM's bus and tag) that supported a small number of devices. Fibre Channel technology provides a means to implement robust storage networks that may consist of hundreds or thousands of devices. Fibre Channel SANs support high-bandwidth storage traffic in the order of 200 MB/s, and enhancements to the Fibre Channel standard will support 10 Gb/s in the near future. This will be mostly used for inter-switch links (ISL) between switches and directors.

Storage subsystems, storage devices, and server systems can be attached to a Fibre Channel SAN. Depending on the implementation, several different components can be used to build a SAN.

A Fibre Channel network may be composed of many different types of interconnect entities, including directors, switches, hubs, and bridges.

Different types of interconnect entities allow Fibre Channel networks of varying scale to be built. In smaller SAN environments you can employ hubs for Fibre Channel arbitrated loop topologies, or switches and directors for Fibre Channel switched fabric topologies. As SANs increase in size and complexity, Fibre Channel directors can be introduced to facilitate a more flexible and fault tolerant configuration. Each of the components that compose a Fibre Channel SAN should provide an individual management capability, as well as participate in an often complex end-to-end management environment.

### 3.1.1 The storage area network

As we have stated previously, a SAN is a dedicated high-performance network to move data between heterogeneous servers and storage resources. It is a separate dedicated network that avoids any traffic conflicts between clients and servers, which are typically encountered on the traditional messaging network. We show this distinction in Figure 3-2 on page 74.

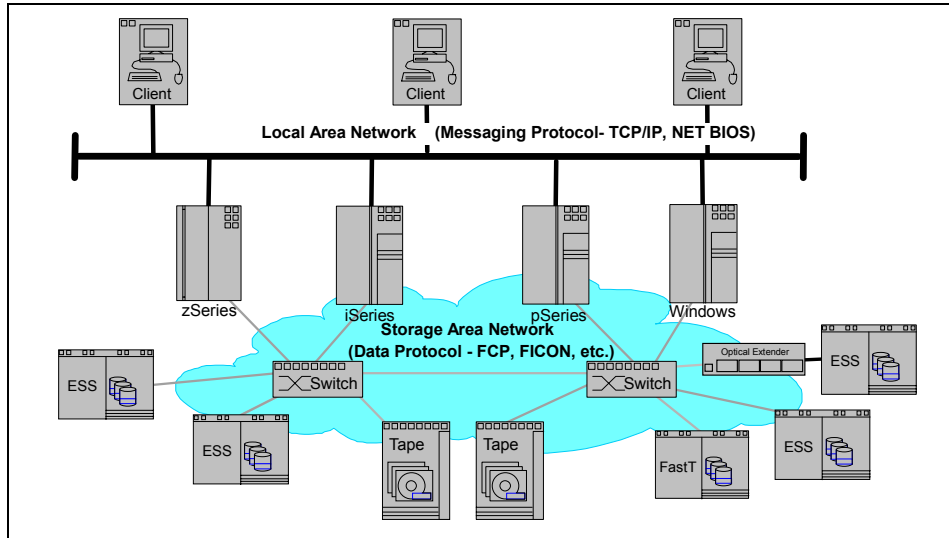


Figure 3-2 The SAN

A Fibre Channel SAN has a high performance because of the speed, which is now up to 200 MB/s, and because of the unique packaging of data, which only consumes about 5 percent of overhead. This leads to an effective use for one connection of approximately 190 MB/s, bidirectionally. The network technology components are directors, switches, and gateways. It is even possible to go over 100 km by using extenders, dark fiber, or Metropolitan Area Networks (MANs).

Unlike NAS products, SAN products do not function like a server or file server. Instead, the SAN product processes different kind of protocols, such as FCP (SCSI), FICON, iSCSI, etc., and the way it does this is transparent to the server or the storage.

## 3.2 Fibre Channel topologies

Fibre Channel based networks share many similarities with other networks, but differ considerably by the absence of topology dependencies. Networks based on Token Ring, Ethernet, and FDDI are topology dependent and cannot share the same media because they have different rules for communication. The only way they can interoperate is through bridges and routers. Each uses its own media-dependent data encoding methods and clock speeds, header format, and frame length restrictions. Fibre Channel based networks support three types of topologies, which include point-to-point, arbitrated loop, and switched. These can be stand-alone or interconnected to form a fabric.

The three Fibre Channel topologies are:

- ▶ Point-to-point
- ▶ Arbitrated loop
- ▶ Switched fabric

Typically, switched fabric is the most commonly encountered topology today.

### **3.2.1 Point-to-point**

A point-to-point connection is the simplest topology. It is used when there are exactly two nodes, and future expansion is not predicted. There is no sharing of the media, which allows the devices to use the total bandwidth of the link. A simple link initialization is needed before communications can begin.

Fibre Channel is a full duplex protocol, which means both paths transmit data simultaneously. Fibre Channel connections based on the 1 Gb standard are able to transmit at 100 MBps and receive at 100 MBps simultaneously. As an example, for Fibre Channel connections based on the 2 Gb standard, they can transmit at 200 MBps and receive at 200 MBps simultaneously. This will extend to 4.25 Gbps and 10 Gbps technologies as well.

Illustrated in Figure 3-3 on page 76 is a simple point-to-point connection.

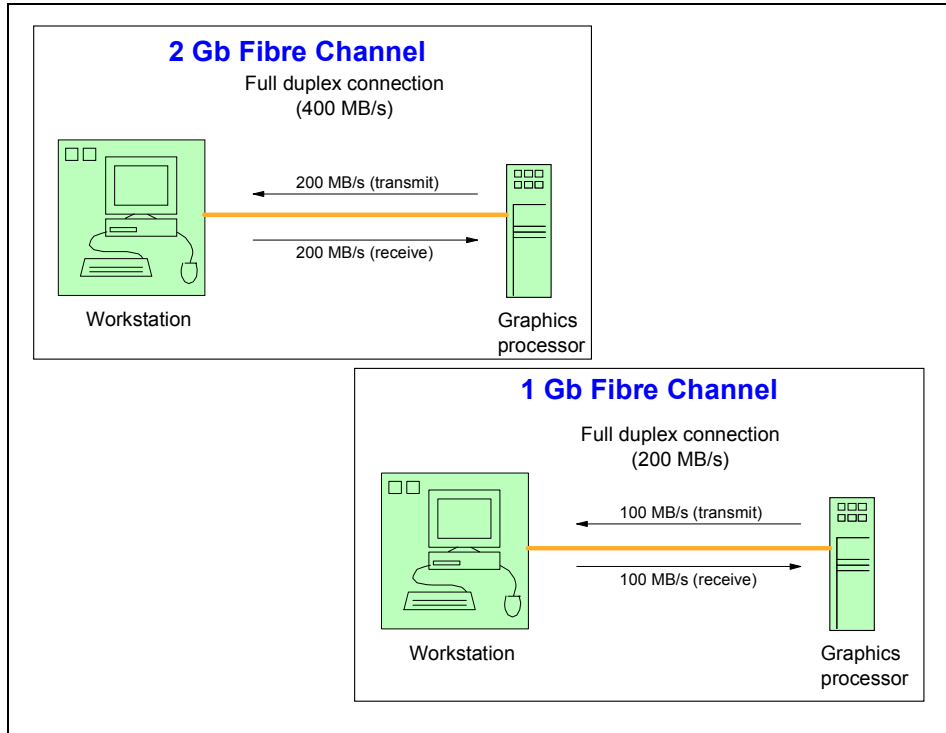


Figure 3-3 Point-to-point

### 3.2.2 Arbitrated loop

The second topology is Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL). FC-AL is more useful for storage applications. It is a loop of up to 126 nodes (NL\_Ports) that is managed as a shared bus. Traffic flows in one direction, carrying data frames and primitives around the loop with a total bandwidth of 200 MBps (or 100 MBps for a loop based on 1 Gbps technology).

Using arbitration protocol, a single connection is established between a sender and a receiver, and a data frame is transferred around the loop. When the communication comes to an end between the two connected ports, the loop becomes available for arbitration and a new connection may be established. Loops can be configured with hubs to make connection management easier. A distance of up to 10 km is supported by the Fibre Channel standard for both of these configurations. However, latency on the arbitrated loop configuration is affected by the loop size.

A simple loop, configured using a hub, is shown in Figure 3-4 on page 77.

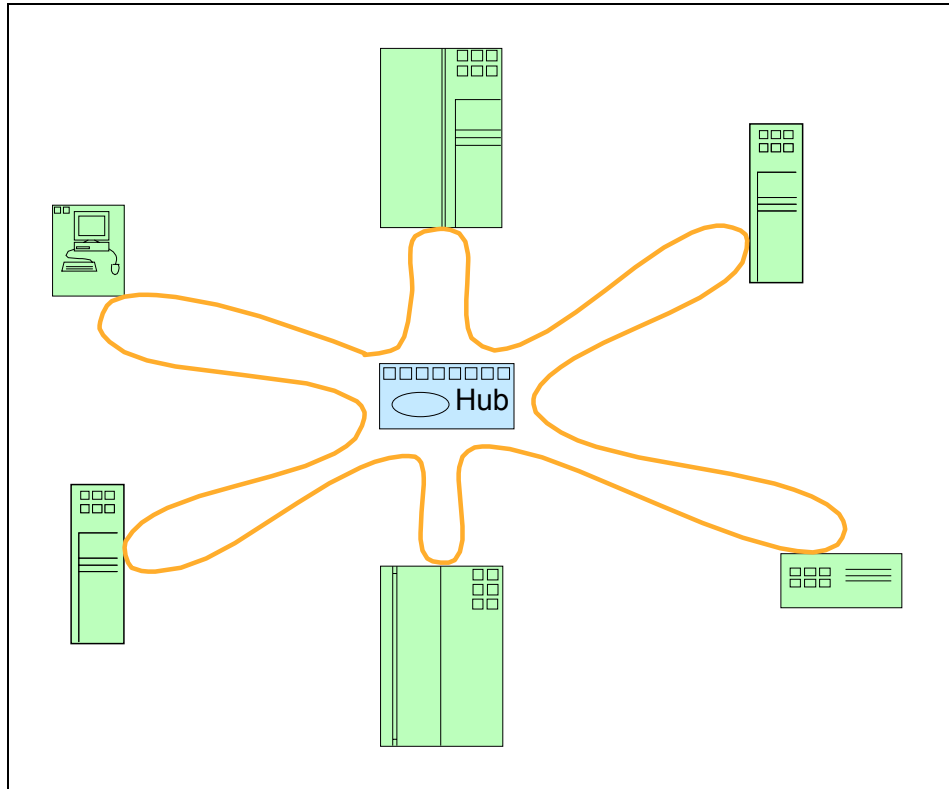


Figure 3-4 Arbitrated loop

### 3.2.3 Switched fabric

The third and most useful topology used in SAN implementations is Fibre Channel Switched Fabric (FC-SW). It applies to directors that support the FC-SW standard, that is, it is not limited to switches as its name suggests. A Fibre Channel fabric is one or more fabric switches in a single, sometimes extended, configuration. Switched fabrics provide up to a full 400 MBps bandwidth per port (or 100/200 MBps for devices based on the older 1/2 Gbps infrastructure), compared to the shared bandwidth per port in arbitrated loop implementations.

One of the key differentiators is that if you add a new device into the arbitrated loop, you further divide the shared bandwidth. However, in a switched fabric, adding a new device or a new connection between existing ones actually increases the bandwidth. For example, an 8-port switch (based on 2 Gbps technology) with three initiators and three targets can support three concurrent

200 MBps conversations or a total of 600 MBps throughput (1,200 MBps if full-duplex applications were available).

A switched fabric configuration is shown in Figure 3-5.

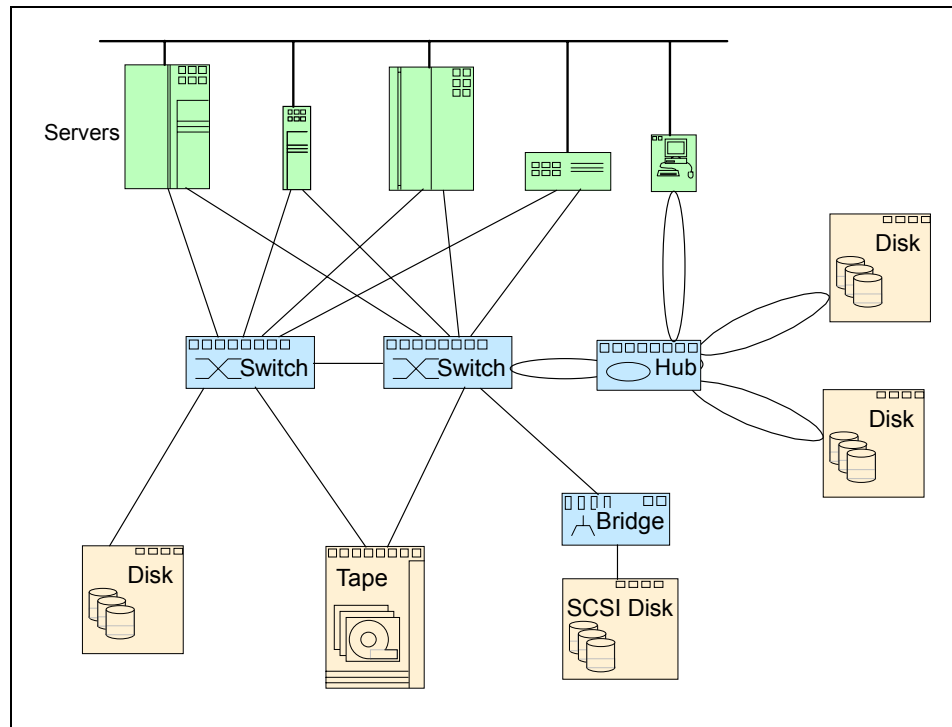


Figure 3-5 Sample switched fabric configuration

This is one of the major reasons why arbitrated loop is fast becoming a legacy SAN topology.

### 3.3 Fibre Channel technology components

The fabric electronics utilize personalized application-specific integrated circuits (ASIC) and its predefined set of elements, such as logic functions, I/O circuits, memory arrays, and backplane to create specialized fabric interface components.

An ASIC provides services to Fibre Channel ports that may be used connect to external N\_Ports (such as an F\_Port or FL\_Port), external loop devices (such as an FL\_Port), or to other switches such as an E\_Port). The ASIC contains the

Fibre channel interface logic, message/buffer queuing logic, and receive buffer memory for the on-chip ports, as well other support logic.

### 3.3.1 Fibre Channel transmission rates

The current set of vendor offerings for switches, host bus adapters, and storage devices is standardized on 2.15 Gb/s components. Most hardware can auto-negotiate to 1 Gbps if necessary to support older hardware.

### 3.3.2 SerDes

The communication over a fibre, whether optical or copper, is serial. Computer buses, on the other hand, use parallel busses. This means that Fibre Channel devices need to be able to convert between these two. For this, they use a serializer/deserializer, which is commonly referred as a SerDes.

### 3.3.3 Backplane and blades

Rather than having a single printed circuit assembly containing all the components in a device, sometimes the design used is that of a *backplane* and *blades*. For example, directors and large core switches usually implement this technology.

The backplane is a circuit board with multiple connectors into which other cards may be plugged. These other cards are usually referred as blades, but other terms could be used.

If the backplane is in the center of the unit with blades being plugged in at the back and front, then it would usually be referred to as a midplane.

## 3.4 Fibre Channel interconnects

In Fibre Channel technology, frames are moved from source to destination using gigabit transport, which is a requirement to achieve fast transfer rates. To communicate with gigabit transport, both sides have to support this type of communication. This can be accomplished by installing this feature into the device or by using specially designed interfaces that can convert other communication transport into gigabit transport. Gigabit transport can be used in copper or fibre optic infrastructure.

The interfaces that are used to convert the internal communication transport to gigabit transport are as follows:

- ▶ XFP

- ▶ Small Form Factor Pluggable Media (SFP)
- ▶ Gigabit Interface Converters (GBIC)
- ▶ Gigabit Link Modules (GLM)
- ▶ Media Interface Adapters (MIA)
- ▶ 1x9 transceivers

### 3.4.1 Ten Gigabit small Form-factor Pluggable

The Ten (X) Gigabit small Form-factor Pluggable (XFP) specification defines the electrical, management, and mechanical interfaces of the XFP module. The module is a hot pluggable small footprint serial-to-serial data-agnostic multi rate optical transceiver, intended to support Telecom (SONET OC-192 and G.709 “OTU-2”) and Datacom applications (10 Gbps Ethernet and 10 Gb/s Fibre Channel). Nominal data rates range from 9.95 Gbps, 10.31 Gbps, 10.52 Gbps, 10.70 Gbps, and the emerging 11.09 Gbps. The modules support all data encoding’s for these technologies. The modules may be used to implement single mode or multi-mode serial optical interfaces at 850 nm, 1310 nm, or 1550 nm. The XFP module design may use one of several different optical connectors. An adaptable heatsink option allows a single module design to be compatible with a variety of hosts.

### 3.4.2 Small Form Factor Pluggable Media

The most common fibre channel interconnect in use today is Small Form Factor Pluggable media, as shown in Figure 4-7. This component is hot pluggable on the I/O module or the HBA, and the cable is also hot-pluggable. The SFP optical transceivers can use short or long-wavelength lasers.

Another version of the transceivers are called Small Form Fixed optical transceivers, and are mounted on the I/O module of the HBA via pin-through-hole technology, as shown in Figure 3-6 on page 81. The transceivers, which are designed for increased densities, performance, and reduced power, are well-suited for Gigabit Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and 1394b applications.





Figure 3-6 SFP

The small dimension of the SFP optical transceivers are ideal in switches and other products where many transceivers have to be configured in a small space.

### 3.4.3 Gigabit Interface Converters

Gigabit Interface Converters (GBICs) are integrated fibre-optic transceivers providing a high-speed serial electrical interface for connecting processors, switches, and peripherals through an optic fibre cable. In SANs they can be used for transmitting data between peripheral devices and processors.

IBM offers laser-based, hot-pluggable, data communications transceivers for a wide range of networking applications requiring high data rates. The transceivers, which are designed for ease of configuration and replacement, are well-suited for Gigabit Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and 1394b applications. Current GBICs are capable of 2125 Mbps transmission rates. GBICs are available in both short wavelength and long wavelength versions, providing configuration flexibility.

GBICs are usually hot-pluggable, and easy to configure and replace. On the optical side they use low-loss, SC type, push-pull connectors. They are mainly used in hubs, switch directors, and gateways. The transfer rates are typically in the range of 1063 Mbps, 1250Mbps, 2125 Mbps, or 2500 Mbps. A GBIC is shown in Figure 3-7 on page 82.



Figure 3-7 GBIC

### 3.4.4 Gigabit Link Modules

Gigabit Link Modules (GLMs) were used in early Fibre Channel applications. They are low-cost alternative to GBICs, but they are not hot-pluggable. They use the same fibre optic for the transport of optical signals as GBICs. The GLM converts encoded data that has been serialized into pulses of laser for transmission into optical fibre. A GLM at a second optical link, running at the same speed as the sending GLM, receives these pulses, along with the requisite synchronous clocking signals.

A GLM is shown in Figure 3-8 on page 83.

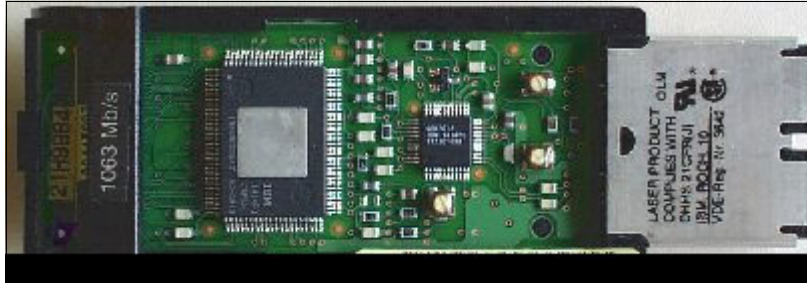


Figure 3-8 GLM

### 3.4.5 Media Interface Adapters

Media Interface Adapters (MIAs) can be used to facilitate conversion between optical and copper interface connections. Typically MIAs are attached to host bus adapters, but they can also be used with switches and hubs. If a hub or switch only supports copper or optical connections, MIAs can be used to convert the signal to the appropriate media type, copper or optical.

An MIA is shown in Figure 3-9.

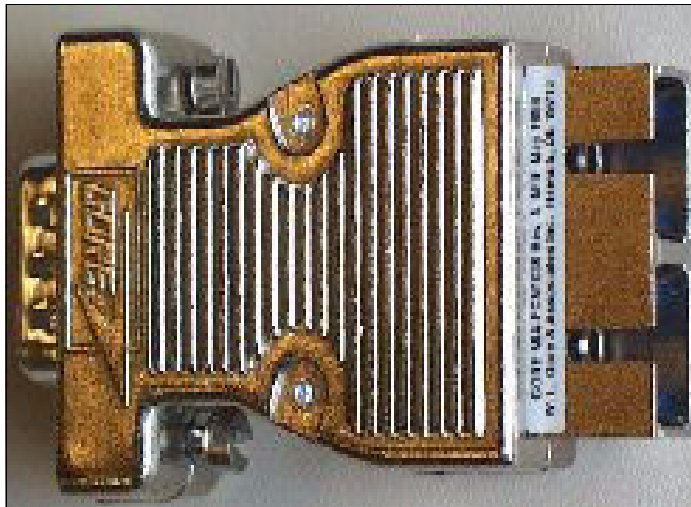


Figure 3-9 MIA

### 3.4.6 1x9 Transceivers

Some switch manufacturers prefer to use 1x9 transceivers for providing the SC connection to their devices. 1x9 transceivers have some advantages over GBICs:

- ▶ Easier to cool
- ▶ Better air flow
- ▶ More reliable (2.5 times that of a GBIC)

### 3.4.7 Cables

Fibre Channel can be run over optical or copper media, but fiber-optic enjoys a major advantage in noise immunity. It is for this reason that fiber-optic cabling is preferred. However, copper is also widely used, and it is likely that in the short term a mixed environment will need to be tolerated and supported.

In addition to the noise immunity, fiber-optic cabling provides a number of distinct advantages over copper transmission lines that make it a very attractive medium for many applications. At the forefront of the advantages are:

- ▶ Greater distance capability than is generally possible with copper
- ▶ Insensitive to induced electro-magnetic interference (EMI)
- ▶ No emitted electro-magnetic radiation (RFI)
- ▶ No electrical connection between two ports
- ▶ Not susceptible to crosstalk
- ▶ Compact and lightweight cables and connectors

However, fiber-optic and optical links do have some drawbacks. Some of the considerations are:

- ▶ Optical links tend to be more expensive than copper links over short distances.
- ▶ Optical connections do not lend themselves to backplane printed circuit wiring.
- ▶ Optical connections may be affected by dirt and other contamination.

Overall, optical fibers have provided a very high-performance transmission medium, which has been refined and proven over many years.

Mixing fiber-optical and copper components in the same environment is supported, although not all products provide that flexibility, and this should be taken into consideration when planning a SAN. Copper cables tend to be used for short distances, up to 30 meters, and can be identified by their DB-9, 9 pin, connector.

Normally, fiber-optic cabling is referred to by mode or the frequencies of light waves that are carried by a particular cable type. Fiber cables come in two distinct types, as shown in Figure 3-10.

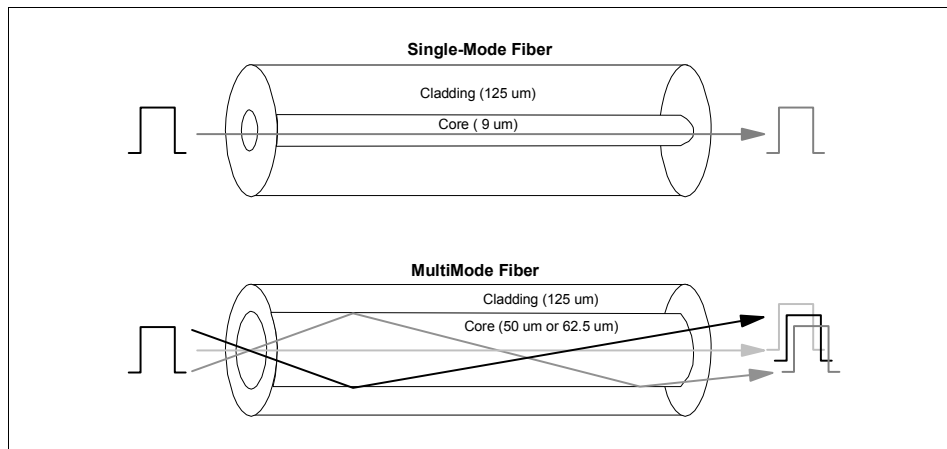


Figure 3-10 Cable types

► Multi-mode fiber (MMF) for shorter distances

Multi-mode cabling is used with shortwave laser light and has either a 50 micron or a 62.5 micron core with a cladding of 125 micron. The 50 micron or 62.5 micron diameter is sufficiently large for injected light waves to be reflected off the core interior.

Multi-mode (MM) fiber allows more than one mode of light. Common MM core sizes are 50 micron and 62.5 micron. Multi-mode fiber is better suited for shorter distance applications. Where costly electronics are heavily concentrated, the primary cost of the system does not lie with the cable. In such a case, MM fibre is more economical because it can be used with inexpensive connectors and laser devices, thereby reducing the total system cost.

► Single-mode fiber (SMF) for longer distances

Single-mode (SM) fibre allows only one pathway, or mode, of light to travel within the fibre. The core size is typically 8.3 micron. Single-mode fibres are used in applications where low signal loss and high data rates are required, such as on long spans between two system or network devices, where repeater/amplifier spacing needs to be maximized.

Fibre Channel architecture supports both short wave and long wave optical transmitter technologies, as follows:

► Short wave laser

This technology uses a wavelength of 780 nanometers and is only compatible with multi-mode fiber.

- ▶ Long wave laser

This technology uses a wavelength of 1300 nanometers. It is compatible with both single-mode and multi-mode fiber.

### 3.4.8 Host bus adapters

The device that acts as an interface between the fabric of a SAN and either a host or a storage device is a Host Bus Adapter (HBA).

The HBA connects to the bus of the host or storage system. It has some means of connecting to the cable or fibre leading to the SAN. Some devices offer more than one Fibre Channel connection. The function of the HBA is to convert the parallel electrical signals from the bus into a serial signal to pass to the SAN.

A host bus adapter is shown in Figure 3-11.

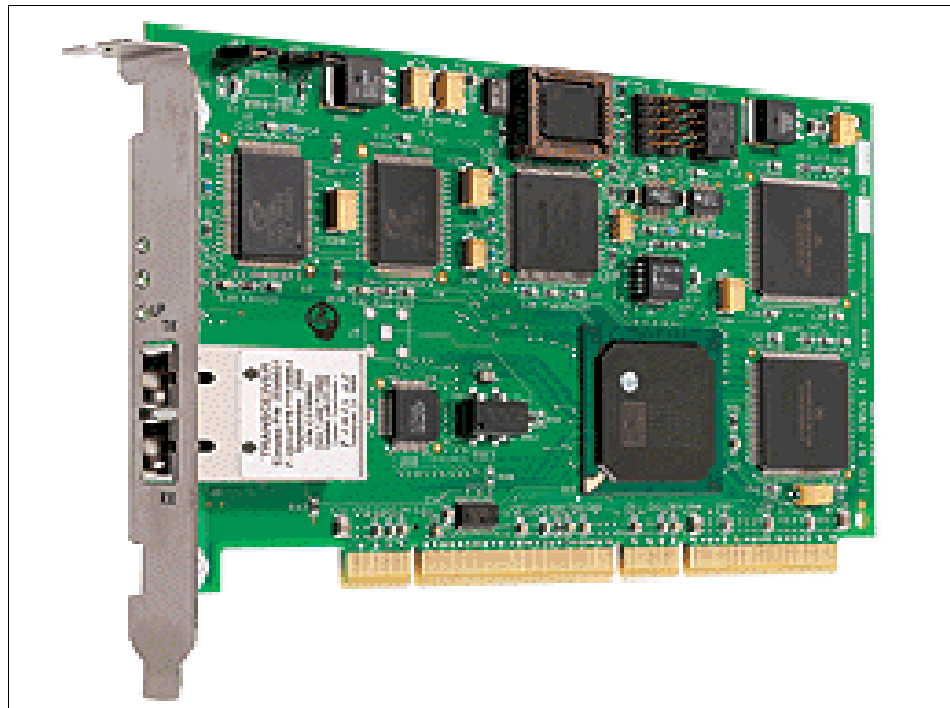


Figure 3-11 HBA

There are several manufacturers of HBAs, and an important consideration when planning a SAN is the choice of HBAs.

### 3.4.9 Inter-switch links

A link joining a pair of E\_Ports is called an inter-switch link (ISL).

ISLs carry frames originating from the node ports and those generated within the fabric. The frames generated within the fabric serve as control, management, and support for the fabric.

Before an ISL can carry frames originating from the node ports, the joining switches have to go through a synchronization process on which operating parameters are interchanged. If the operating parameters are not compatible, the switches may not join, and the ISL becomes *segmented*. Segmented ISLs cannot carry traffic originating on node ports, but they can still carry management and control frames.

### 3.4.10 Cascading

Expanding the fabric is called switch cascading. Cascading is basically interconnecting Fibre Channel switches and/or directors. The cascading of switches provides the following benefits to a SAN environment:

- ▶ The fabric can be seamlessly extended. Additional switches can be added to the fabric, without powering down existing fabric.
- ▶ You can easily increase the distance between various SAN participants.
- ▶ By adding more switches to the fabric, you increase connectivity by providing more available ports.
- ▶ Cascading provides high resilience in the fabric.
- ▶ With inter-switch links (ISLs), you can increase the bandwidth. The frames between the switches are delivered over all available data paths. So the more ISLs you create, the faster the frame delivery will be, but careful consideration must be employed to ensure that a bottleneck is not introduced.
- ▶ When the fabric grows, the name server is fully distributed across all the switches in fabric.
- ▶ With cascading, you also provide greater fault tolerance within the fabric.

#### Hops

When FC traffic traverses an ISL, this is known as a *hop*. Or, to put it another way, traffic going from one switch over an ISL to another switch is one hop.

### 3.4.11 Latency

Typically, in the SAN world, latency is the time that it takes for a FC frame to traverse the fabric. By fabric, we mean the FC components, and in any latency discussion related to the SAN, it is unusual if the host or storage is included in the equation. Usually the time taken is expressed in microseconds, which gives an indication as to the performance characteristics of the SAN fabric. It will often be given at a switch level, and sometimes a fabric level.

### 3.4.12 Trunking

Trunking is a feature of switches that enables traffic to be distributed across available inter-switch links (ISLs) while still preserving in-order delivery. On some Fibre Channel protocols devices, frame traffic between a source device and destination device must be delivered in order within an exchange.

This restriction forces current devices to fix a routing path within a fabric. Consequently, certain traffic patterns in a fabric can cause all active routes to be allocated to a single available path and leave other paths unused. Trunking creates a trunking group (a set of available paths linking two adjacent switches). Ports in the trunking group are called trunking ports.

We illustrate the concepts of trunking in Figure 3-12 on page 89.



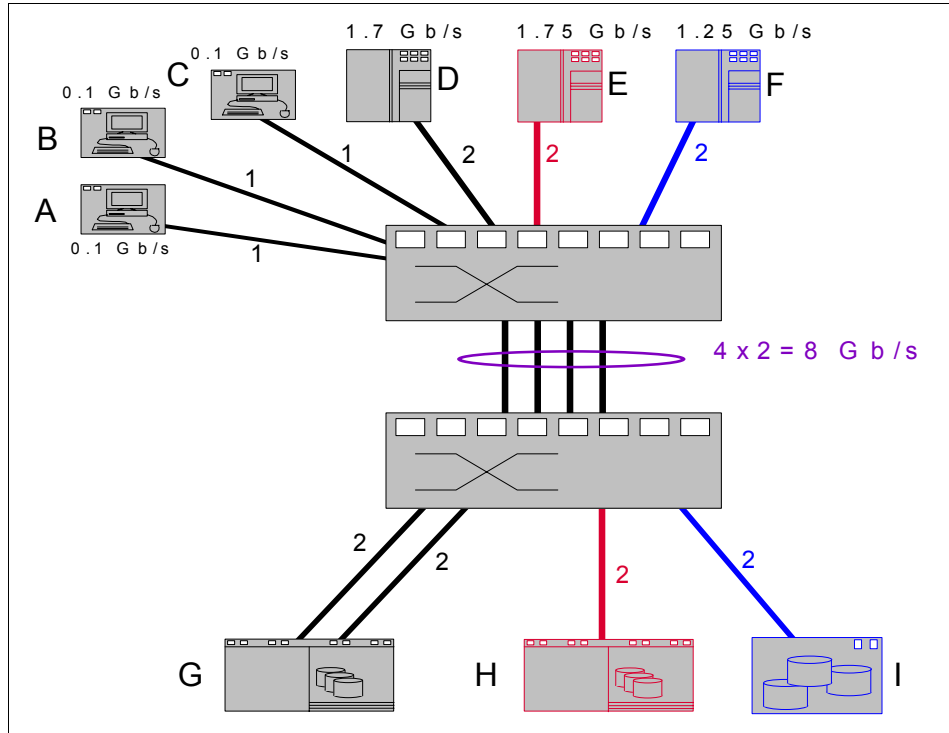


Figure 3-12 Trunking

In this example we have six computers that are accessing three storage devices. Computers A, B, C, and D are communicating with Storage G. Server E is communicating with storage H, and server F uses disks in storage device I.

The speeds of the links are shown in Gbps, and the target throughput for each computer is shown. If we let FSPF alone decide the routing for us, we could have a situation where servers D and E were both utilizing the same ISL. This would lead to oversubscription and hence congestion, as 1.7 added to 1.75 is greater than 2.

If all of the ISLs are gathered together into a trunk, then effectively they can be seen as a single, big ISL. In effect, they appear to be an 8 Gbps ISL. This bandwidth is greater than the total requirement of all of the servers. In fact, the nodes require an aggregate bandwidth of 5 Gbps, so we could even suffer a failure of one of the ISLs and still have enough bandwidth to satisfy their needs.

When the nodes come up, FSPF will simply see one route, and they will all be assigned a route over the same trunk. The fabric operating systems in the switches will share the load over the actual ISLs, which combine to make up the trunk. This is done by distributing frames over the physical links, and then re-assembling them at the destination switch so that in-order delivery can be assured, if necessary. To FSPF, a trunk will appear as a single, low-cost ISL.

### **3.4.13 Frame filtering**

Frame filtering is a feature that enables devices to provide zoning functions with finer granularity. Frame filtering can be used to set up port level zoning, world wide name zoning, device level zoning, protocol level zoning, and LUN level zoning. Frame filtering is commonly carried out by an ASIC. This has the result that, after the filter is set up, the complicated function of zoning and filtering can be achieved at wire speed.

### **3.4.14 Oversubscription**

We use the term oversubscribing to describe the occasion when we have several ports trying to communicate with each other, and when the total throughput is higher than what that port can provide.

This can happen on storage ports and ISLs. When designing a SAN it is important to consider the possible traffic patterns to determine the possibility of oversubscription, which may result in degraded performance. Oversubscription of an ISL may be overcome by adding a parallel ISL. Oversubscription to a storage device may be overcome by adding another adapter to the storage array and connecting into the fabric.

### **3.4.15 Congestion**

When oversubscription occurs, it leads to a condition called congestion. When a node is unable to utilize as much bandwidth as it would like to, due to contention with another node, then there is a congestion. A port, link, or fabric can be congested.

## **3.5 Fibre Channel devices**

In the topics that follow we cover some of the devices that are commonly encountered in a SAN.

### 3.5.1 Bridges and gateways

A bridge is a device that converts signals and data from one form to another. In the specific case of SAN, a bridge is a unit converting between Fibre Channel and legacy storage protocols such as:

- ▶ SCSI
- ▶ SSA

The offerings from IBM are called SAN Data Gateways or SAN Data Gateway Routers. Depending on the particular bridge, it may be possible to have only a single Fibre Channel port, whereas some will support multiple ports.

### 3.5.2 Arbitrated loop hubs

FC-AL topology allows devices be connected using discreet cabling, or an Arbitrated Loop hub.

In FC-AL all devices on the loop share the bandwidth. The total number of devices that may participate in the loop is 126, without using any hubs or fabric. For practical reasons, however, the number tends to be limited to no more than 10 and 15.

Hubs are typically used in a SAN to attach devices or servers that do not support switched fabric only FC-AL. They may be unmanaged hubs, managed hubs, or switched hubs.

Unmanaged hubs serve as cable concentrators and as a means to configure the Arbitrated Loop based on the connections it detects. When any of the hub's interfaces, usually GBIC, senses no cable connected, that interface shuts down and the hub port is bypassed as part of the Arbitrated Loop configuration.

Managed hubs offer all the benefits of unmanaged hubs, but in addition offer the ability to manage them remotely, using SNMP.

### 3.5.3 Switched hubs

Switched hubs allow devices to be connected in its own Arbitrated Loop. These loops are then internally connected by a switched fabric.

A switched hub is useful to connect several FC-AL devices together, but to allow them to communicate at full Fibre Channel bandwidth rather than them all sharing the bandwidth.

Switched hubs are usually managed hubs.

### 3.5.4 Switches and directors

Switches and directors allow Fibre Channel devices to be connected together, implementing a switched fabric topology between them. The switch intelligently routes frames from the initiator to responder and operates at full Fibre Channel bandwidth.

It is possible to connect switches together in cascades and meshes using inter-switch links (E\_Ports). It should be noted that devices from different manufacturers may not inter-operate fully.

The switch also provides a variety of fabric services and features such as:

- ▶ Name service
- ▶ Fabric control
- ▶ Time service
- ▶ Automatic discovery and registration of host and storage devices
- ▶ Rerouting of frames, if possible, in the event of a port problem
- ▶ Storage services (virtualization, replication, extended distances)

It is common to refer to switches as either *core* switches or *edge* switches depending on where they are located in the SAN. If the switch forms, or is part of the SAN backbone, then it is the core switch. If it is mainly used to connect to hosts or storage then it is called an edge switch. Like it or not, directors are also sometimes referred to as switches. Whether this is appropriate is a matter for debate outside of this book.

### 3.5.5 Routers

Beginning to make an impact on the market are devices that are multiprotocol routers. These provide improved scalability, security, and manageability by enabling devices in separate SAN fabrics to communicate without merging fabrics into a single, large SAN fabric. Depending on the manufacturer, they support a number of protocols and have their own features, such as zoning. As their name suggests, the protocols supported include:

- ▶ FCP
- ▶ FCIP
- ▶ iFCP
- ▶ iSCSI
- ▶ IP

### 3.5.6 Service modules

Increasingly, with the demand for the intermix of protocols and the introduction to the marketplace of new technologies, SAN vendors are starting to adopt a

modular system approach to their components. What this means is that service modules can be plugged into a slot on the switch or director to provide functions and features such as virtualization, the combination of protocols, storage services, and so on.

### **3.5.7 Storage considered as legacy**

In the context of a SAN, legacy equipment consists of devices that do not inherently support Fibre Channel. As an example, SCSI disk arrays, tape drives, and SSA devices may be considered as legacy equipment.

In order to protect your investment, it is often a requirement that legacy equipment gets reused after the implementation of SAN.

A bridge, router, or gateway device is used to convert between these protocols. These have Fibre Channel connectivity offering connections to the legacy equipment at the same time.

## **3.6 Fibre Channel features and terminology**

In the topics that follow we describe some of the features of a SAN environment, and introduce some of the terminology used, along with its meaning.

### **3.6.1 Blocking**

To support highly performing fabrics, the fabric components (switches or directors) must be able to move data around without any impact to other ports, targets, or initiators that are on the same fabric. If the internal structure of the switch or director cannot do so without impact, we end up with blocking.

Blocking means that the Fibre Channel does not get to the destination. This is opposed to the congestion, where data will be delivered, albeit with a delay. Switches and directors may employ a non-blocking switching architecture.

### **3.6.2 Port types**

The basic building block of the Fibre Channel is the port. The following lists the various types of Fibre Channel port types and their purposes in switches, servers, and storage. These are the types of Fibre Channel ports that are likely to be encountered:

- ▶ **E\_Port:** This is an expansion port. A port is designated an E\_Port when it is used as an inter-switch expansion port (ISL) to connect to the E\_Port of another switch, to enlarge the switch fabric.

- ▶ F\_Port: This is a fabric port that is not loop capable. It is used to connect an N\_Port point-point to a switch.
- ▶ FL\_Port: This is a fabric port that is loop capable. It is used to connect an NL\_Port to the switch in a public loop configuration.
- ▶ G\_Port: This is a generic port that can operate as either an E\_Port or an F\_Port. A port is defined as a G\_Port after it is connected but has not received a response to *loop* initialization or has not yet completed the link initialization procedure with the adjacent Fibre Channel device.
- ▶ L\_Port: This is a loop-capable node or switch port.
- ▶ U\_Port: This is a universal port—a more generic switch port than a G\_Port. It can operate as either an E\_Port, F\_Port, or FL\_Port. A port is defined as a U\_Port when it is not connected or has not yet assumed a specific function in the fabric.
- ▶ N\_Port: This is a node port that is not loop capable. It is used to connect an equipment port to the fabric.
- ▶ NL\_Port: This is a node port that is loop capable. It is used to connect an equipment port to the fabric in a loop configuration through an L\_Port or FL\_Port.
- ▶ MTx\_Port: CNT port used as a mirror for viewing the transmit stream of the port to be diagnosed.
- ▶ MRx\_Port: CNT port used as a mirror for viewing the receive stream of the port to be diagnosed.
- ▶ SD\_Port: Cisco SPAN port used for mirroring another port for diagnostic purposes.

Figure 3-13 on page 95 represents some of the most commonly encountered Fibre Channel port types.

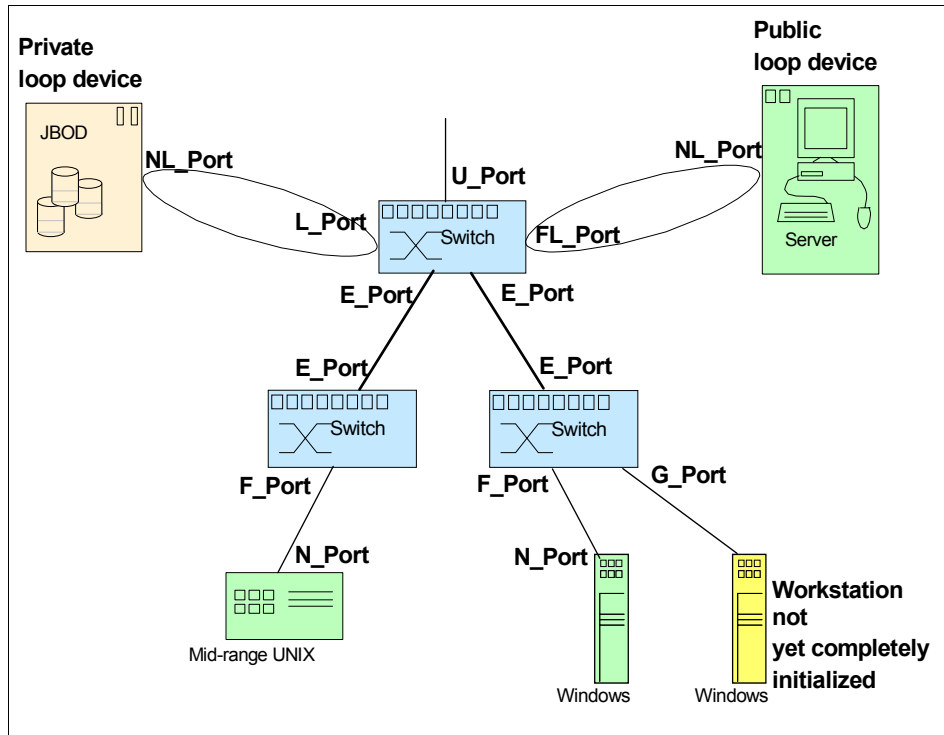


Figure 3-13 Fibre Channel port types

### 3.6.3 Domain ID

A domain ID is a unique number that identifies the switch or director to a fabric. It can be either static or dynamic. Static (insistent) domain IDs are a requirement for FICON. Each manufacturer will have a range of numbers, and a maximum number of domain IDs that can be used in a fabric.

### 3.6.4 Class of service

Fibre Channel standards provide different classes of service.

### 3.6.5 Class 1

In class 1 service, a dedicated connection source and destination is established through the fabric for the duration of the transmission. It provides acknowledged service. This class of service ensures that the frames are received by the destination device in the same order in which they are sent, and reserves full bandwidth for the connection between the two devices. It does not provide for a

good utilization of the available bandwidth, since it is blocking another possible contender for the same device. Because of this blocking and necessary dedicated connections, class 1 is rarely used.

### **3.6.6 Class 2**

Class 2 is a connectionless, acknowledged service. Class 2 makes better use of available bandwidth since it allows the fabric to multiplex several messages on a frame-by-frame basis. As frames travel through the fabric they can take different routes, so class 2 service does not guarantee in-order delivery. Class 2 relies on upper layer protocols to take care of frame sequence. The use of acknowledgments reduces available bandwidth, which needs to be considered in large-scale busy networks.

### **3.6.7 Class 3**

There is no dedicated connection in class 3 and the received frames are not acknowledged. Class 3 is also called *datagram connectionless* service. It optimizes the use of fabric resources, but it is now upper layer protocol to ensure that all frames are received in the proper order, and to request to the source device the retransmission of missing frames. Class 3 is a commonly used class of service in Fibre Channel networks.

### **3.6.8 Class 4**

Class 4 is a connection-oriented service like class 1, but the main difference is that it allocates only a fraction of available bandwidth of path through the fabric that connects two N\_Ports. Virtual Circuits (VCs) are established between two N\_Ports with guaranteed Quality of Service (QoS), including bandwidth and latency. Like class 1, class 4 guarantees in-order delivery frame delivery and provides acknowledgment of delivered frames, but now the fabric is responsible for multiplexing frames of different VCs. Class 4 service is mainly intended for multimedia applications such as video and for applications that allocate an established bandwidth by department within the enterprise. Class 4 was added in the FC-PH-2 standard.

### **3.6.9 Class 5**

Class 5 is called isochronous service, and it is intended for applications that require immediate delivery of the data as it arrives, with no buffering. It is not clearly defined yet. It is not included in the FC-PH documents.



### 3.6.10 Class 6

Class 6 is a variant of class 1, known as multicast class of service. It provides dedicated connections for a reliable multicast. An N\_Port may request a class 6 connection for one or more destinations. A multicast server in the fabric will establish the connections and get acknowledgment from the destination ports, and send it back to the originator. Once a connection is established, it should be retained and guaranteed by the fabric until the initiator ends the connection. Class 6 was designed for applications like audio and video requiring multicast functionality. It appears in the FC-PH-3 standard.

### 3.6.11 Class F

Class F service is defined in the FC-SW and FC-SW-2 standard for use by switches communicating through ISLs. It is a connectionless service with notification of non-delivery between E\_Ports used for control, coordination, and configuration of the fabric. Class F is similar to class 2; the main difference is that Class 2 deals with N\_Ports sending data frames, while Class F is used by E\_ports for control and management of the fabric.

### 3.6.12 Buffers

Ports need memory, or buffers, to temporarily store FC frames as they arrive and until they are assembled in sequence, and delivered to the upper layer protocol.

The number of buffers (the number of frames a port can store) is called its *Buffer Credit*.

#### **BB\_Credit**

During login, N\_Ports and F\_Ports at both ends of a link establish its Buffer to Buffer Credit (BB\_Credit).

#### **EE\_Credit**

During login all N\_Ports establish End to End Credit (EE\_Credit) with each other.

During data transmission, a port should not send more frames than the buffer of the receiving port can handle before getting an indication from the receiving port that it has processed a previously sent frame.

## 3.7 Addressing

All devices in a Fibre Channel environment have an identity. The way that the identity is assigned and used depends on the format of the Fibre Channel fabric.

For example, there is a difference between the way that addressing is done in an arbitrated loop and a fabric.

### **3.7.1 World Wide Name**

All Fibre Channel devices have a unique identity called the World Wide Name (WWN). This is similar to the way all Ethernet cards have a unique MAC address.

Each N\_Port will have its own WWN, but it also possible for a device with more than one Fibre Channel adapter to have its own WWN as well. Thus, for example, an IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server has its own WWN as well as incorporating the WWNs of the adapter within it. This means that a soft zone can be created using the entire array, or individual zones could be created using particular adapters. In the future, this will be the case of the servers as well.

This WWN is a 64-bit address, and if two WWN addresses are put into the frame header, this leaves 16 bytes of data just for identifying destination and source address. So 64-bit addresses can impact routing performance.

### **3.7.2 WWN and WWPN**

Each device in the SAN is identified by a unique world wide name (WWN). The WWN contains a vendor identifier field, which is defined and maintained by the IEEE, and a vendor-specific information field.

Currently, there are two formats of the WWN as defined by the IEEE. The original format contains either a hex 10 or hex 20 in the first two bytes of the address. This is then followed by the vendor-specific information.

The new addressing scheme starts with a hex 5 or 6 in the first half-byte followed by the vendor identifier in the next 3 bytes. The vendor-specific information is then contained in the following fields.

Some devices may have multiple Fibre Channel adapters, like an ESS, for example. In this case the device also has an identifier for each of its Fibre Channel adapters. This identifier is called the world wide port name (WWPN). It is possible to uniquely identify all Fibre Channel adapters and paths within a device.

### **3.7.3 Port address**

Because of the potential impact on routing performance by using 64-bit addressing, there is another addressing scheme used in Fibre Channel networks. This scheme is used to address ports in the switched fabric. Each port

in the switched fabric has its own unique 24-bit address. With this 24-bit address scheme, we get a smaller frame header, and this can speed up the routing process. With this frame header and routing logic, the Fibre Channel is optimized for high-speed switching of frames.

With a 24-bit addressing scheme, this allows for up to 16 million addresses, which is an address space larger than any practical SAN design in existence in today's world. There needs to be some relationship between this 24-bit address and the 64-bit address associated with World Wide Names. We will explain this in the section that follows.

### **3.7.4 24-bit port address**

The 24-bit address scheme removes the overhead of manual administration of addresses by allowing topology itself to assign addresses. This is not like WWN addressing, in which the addresses are assigned to the manufacturers by the IEEE standards committee, and are built in to the device at the time of manufacture. If the topology itself assigns the 24-bit addresses, then somebody has to be responsible for the addressing scheme from WWN addressing to port addressing.

In the switched fabric environment, the switch itself is responsible for assigning and maintaining the port addresses. When the device with its WWN logs into the switch on a specific port, the switch will assign the port address to that port and the switch will also maintain the correlation between the port address and the WWN address of the device of that port. This function of the switch is implemented by using the Name Server.

The Name Server is a component of the fabric operating system, which runs inside the switch. It is essentially a database of objects in which fabric-attached device registers its values.

Dynamic addressing also removes the partial element of human error in addressing maintenance, and provides more flexibility in additions, moves, and changes in the SAN.

### **3.7.5 Loop address**

An NL\_Port, like an N\_Port, has a 24-bit port address. If no switch connection exists, the two upper bytes of this port address are zeroes (x'00 00') and referred to as a private loop. The devices on the loop have no connection with the outside world. If the loop is attached to a fabric and an NL\_Port supports a fabric login, the upper two bytes are assigned a positive value by the switch. We call this mode a public loop.

As fabric-capable NL\_Ports are members of both a local loop and the greater fabric community, a 24-bit address is needed as an identifier in the network. In this case of public loop assignment, the value of the upper two bytes represents the loop identifier, and this will be common to all NL\_Ports on the same loop that performed login to the fabric.

In both public and private Arbitrated Loops, the last byte of the 24-bit port address refers to the Arbitrated Loop physical address (AL\_PA). The AL\_PA is acquired during initialization of the loop and may, in the case of a fabric-capable loop device, be modified by the switch during login.

The total number of the AL\_PAs available for Arbitrated Loop addressing is 127. This number is based on the requirements of 8b/10b running disparity between frames.

### 3.7.6 FICON addressing

FICON generates the 24-bit FC port address filed in yet another way. When communication is required from the FICON channel port to the FICON CU port, the FICON channel (using FC-SB-2 and FC-FS protocol information) will provide the address of its port, the source port address identifier (S\_ID); and the address of the CU port, the destination port address identifier (D\_ID) (when the communication is from the channel N\_Port to the CU N\_Port).

The Fibre Channel architecture does not specify how a Server N\_Port determines the destination port address of the Storage Device N\_Port it requires to communicate to. This is Node and N\_Port implementation dependent.

The Fibre Channel architecture (FC-FS) uses a 24-bit FC port address (3 bytes) for each port in an FC switch. The switch port addresses in a FICON native (FC) mode are always assigned by the switch fabric.

For the FICON channel in FICON native (FC) mode, the Accept (ACC ELS) response to the Fabric Login (FLOGI), in switched point-to-point topology, provides the channel with the 24-bit N\_Port address to which the channel is connected. This N\_Port address is in the ACC destination address field (D\_ID) of the FC-2 header.

The FICON CU port will also perform a fabric login to obtain its 24-bit FC port address.

## 3.8 Fabric services

There is a set of services available to all devices participating in a fabric. They are known as fabric services, and include:

- ▶ Management services
- ▶ Time services
- ▶ Name services
- ▶ Login services
- ▶ Registered State Change Notification (RSCN)

These services are implemented by switches and directors participating in the SAN. Generally speaking, the services are distributed across all the devices, and a node can make use of whichever switching device it is connected to.

### 3.8.1 Management services

This is an inband fabric service that allows data to be passed from device to management platforms. This will include such information as the topology of the SAN. A critical feature of this service is that it allows management software access to the SNS, bypassing any potential block caused by zoning. This means that a management suite can have a view of the entire SAN. The well-known port used for the Management Server is 0xFFFFFA.

### 3.8.2 Time services

At the time of writing, this has not been defined. However, the assigned port is 0xFFFFFB. It is intended for the management of fabric-wide expiration timers or elapsed time values, and not intended for precise time synchronization.

### 3.8.3 Name services

Fabric switches implement a concept known as the Name Server. All switches in the fabric keep the SNS updated, and are therefore all aware of all devices in the SNS. After a node has successfully logged into the fabric, it performs a PLOGI into a well-known port, 0xFFFFFC. This allows it to register itself and pass on critical information such as class of service parameters, its WWN/address, and the upper layer protocols that it can support.

### 3.8.4 Login services

In order to do a fabric login, a node communicates with the login server at address 0xFFFFFE.

### 3.8.5 Registered State Change Notification

This service, Registered State Change Notification (RSCN), is critical, as it propagates information about a change in the state of one node to all other nodes in the fabric. This means that in the event of, for example, a node being shut down, that the other nodes on the SAN will be informed and can take necessary steps to stop communicating with it. This prevents the other nodes from trying to communicate with the node that has been shut down, timing out, and retrying.

## 3.9 Logins

There are three different types of login for Fibre Channel. These are:

- ▶ Fabric login
- ▶ Port login
- ▶ Process login

We explain their roles in the SAN in the topics that follow.

### 3.9.1 Fabric login

After the fabric-capable Fibre Channel device is attached to a fabric switch, it will carry out a fabric login (FLOGI).

Similar to port login, FLOGI is an extended link service command that sets up a session between two participants. With FLOGU a session is created between an N\_Port or NL\_Port and the switch. An N\_Port will send a FLOGI frame that contains its Node Name, its N\_Port Name, and service parameters to a well-known address of 0xFFFFFE.

The switch accepts the login and returns an accept (ACC) frame to the sender. If some of the service parameters requested by the N\_Port or NL\_Port are not supported the switch will set the appropriate bits in the ACC frame to indicate this.

NL\_Ports derives its AL\_PA during the loop initialization process (LIP). The switch then decides if it will accept this AL\_PA, if it does not conflict with any previously assigned AL\_PA on the loop. If not, a new AL\_PA is assigned to the NL\_Port, which then causes the start of another LIP.

## 3.9.2 Port login

Port login, also known as PLOGI, is used to establish a session between two N\_Ports and is necessary before any upper level commands or operations can be performed. During port login, two N\_Ports (devices) swap service parameters and make themselves known to each other.

## 3.9.3 Process login

Process login is also known as PRLI. Process login is used to set up the environment between related processes on an originating N\_Port and a responding N\_Port. A group of related processes is collectively known as an image pair. The processes involved can be system processes and system images, such as mainframe logical partitions, control unit images, and FC-4 processes. Use of process login is optional from the perspective of the Fibre Channel FC-2 layer, but may be required by a specific upper-level protocol, as in the case of SCSI-FCP mapping.

# 3.10 Path routing mechanisms

A complex fabric can be made of interconnected switches and directors, perhaps even spanning a LAN/WAN connection. The challenge is to route the traffic with a minimum of overhead, latency, and reliability, and to prevent out-of-order delivery of frames. Here are some of the mechanisms.

## 3.10.1 Spanning tree

In case of failure, it is important to consider having an alternative path between source and destination available. This will allow data to still reach its destination. However, having different paths available could lead to the delivery of frames being out of the order, due to frame taking a different path and arriving earlier than one of its predecessors.

A solution, which can be incorporated into the meshed fabric, is called a spanning tree and is an IEEE 802.1 standard. This means that switches keep to certain paths, as the spanning tree protocol will block certain paths to produce a simply connected active topology. Then the shortest path in terms of hops is used to deliver the frames, and only one path is active at a time. This means that all associated frames go over the same path to the destination. The paths that are blocked can be held in reserve and used only if, for example, a primary path fails.

The most commonly used path selection protocol is Fabric Shortest Path First (FSPF). This type of path selection is usually performed at boot time, and no configuration is needed. All paths are established at start time, and only if no inter-switch link (ISL) is broken or added will reconfiguration take place.

### 3.10.2 Fabric Shortest Path First

According to the FC-SW-2 standard, Fabric Shortest Path First (FSPF) is a link state path selection protocol. The concepts used in FSPF were first proposed by Brocade, and have since been incorporated into the FC-SW-2 standard. Since then it has been adopted by most, if not all, manufacturers. All the switches and directors in the IBM portfolio implement and utilize FSPF.

#### What FSPF is

FSPF keeps track of the links on all switches in the fabric and associates a cost with each link. The cost is always calculated as being directly proportional to the number of hops. The protocol computes paths from a switch to all other switches in the fabric by adding the cost of all links traversed by the path, and choosing the path that minimizes the cost.

#### How FSPF works

The collection of link states (including cost) of all switches in a fabric constitutes the topology database (or link state database). The topology database is kept in all switches in the fabric, and they are maintained and synchronized to each other. There is an initial database synchronization, and an update mechanism. The initial database synchronization is used when a switch is initialized, or when an ISL comes up. The update mechanism is used when there is a link state change. This ensures consistency among all switches in the fabric.

#### How FSPF helps

In the situation where there are multiple routes, FSPF will ensure that the route that is used is the one with the lowest number of hops. If all the hops:

- ▶ Have the same latency
- ▶ Operate at the same speed
- ▶ Have no congestion

then FSPF will ensure that the frames get to their destinations by the fastest route.



### 3.10.3 Layers

Fibre Channel (FC) is broken into a series of five independent layers. Although FC contains five layers, those layers follow the general principles stated in the ISO/OSI model.

The five layers are divided into two:

- ▶ Physical and signaling layers
- ▶ Upper layers

The five layers are illustrated in Figure 3-14.

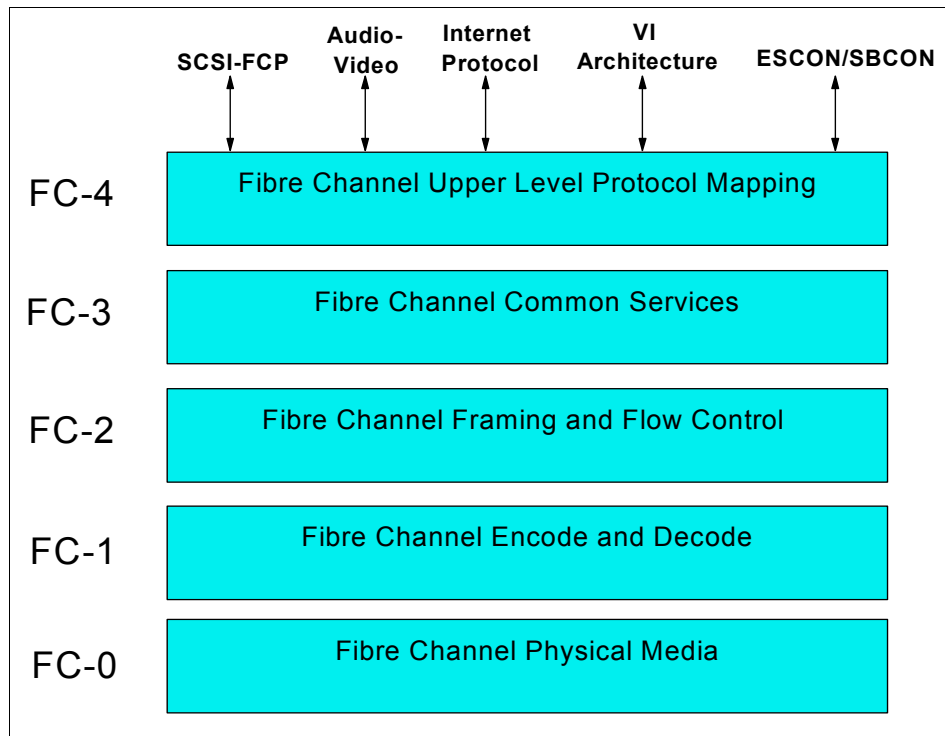


Figure 3-14 FC layers

The physical and signalling layers include the three lowest layers: FC-0, FC-1, and FC-2.

- ▶ Physical and interface media: FC-0 defines physical media and transmission rates. These include cables, and connectors drivers, transmitters, and receivers.
- ▶ Transmission protocol: FC-1 defines encoding schemes. These are used to synchronize data for transmission.

- ▶ Framing and signalling protocol: FC-2 defines framing protocol and flow control. This protocol is self-configuring and supports point-to-point, arbitrated loop, and switched topologies.

### Upper layers

Fibre Channel is a transport service that moves data quickly and reliably between nodes. The two upper layers enhance the functionality of Fibre Channel and provide common implementations for interoperability. The upper layers includes two layers: FC-3 and FC-4.

- ▶ Common services: FC-3 defines common services for nodes. One defined service is multicast to deliver one transmission to multiple destinations. This layer also provides hunt group and striping services.
- ▶ Upper layer protocol mapping (ULP): FC-4 provides application-specific protocols. Protocols such as FCP, FICON, and IP can be mapped to the Fibre Channel transport service.

## 3.11 Zoning

Zoning allows for finer segmentation of the switched fabric. Zoning can be used to instigate a barrier between different environments. Only the members of the same zone can communicate within that zone, and all other attempts from outside are rejected.

For example, it may be desirable to separate a Windows NT environment from a UNIX environment. This is very useful because of the manner in which Windows attempts to claim all storage for itself.

It could also be considered as a security feature and not just for separating environments. Zoning could also be used for test and maintenance purposes.

Zoning also introduces the flexibility to manage a switched fabric to meet different user group objectives.

Zoning can be implemented in two ways:

- ▶ Hardware zoning
- ▶ Software zoning

These forms of zoning are different, but are not necessarily mutually exclusive. Depending upon the particular manufacturer of the SAN hardware, it is possible for hardware zones and software zones to overlap. This adds to flexibility, but can make the solution complicated, increasing the need for good management software and documentation of the SAN.

### 3.11.1 Hardware zoning

Hardware zoning is based on the physical fabric port number. The members of a zone are physical ports on the fabric switch.

The availability of hardware enforced zoning and the methods to create hardware enforced zones depend upon the switch hardware used.

Figure 3-15 shows an example of zoning based on the switch port numbers.

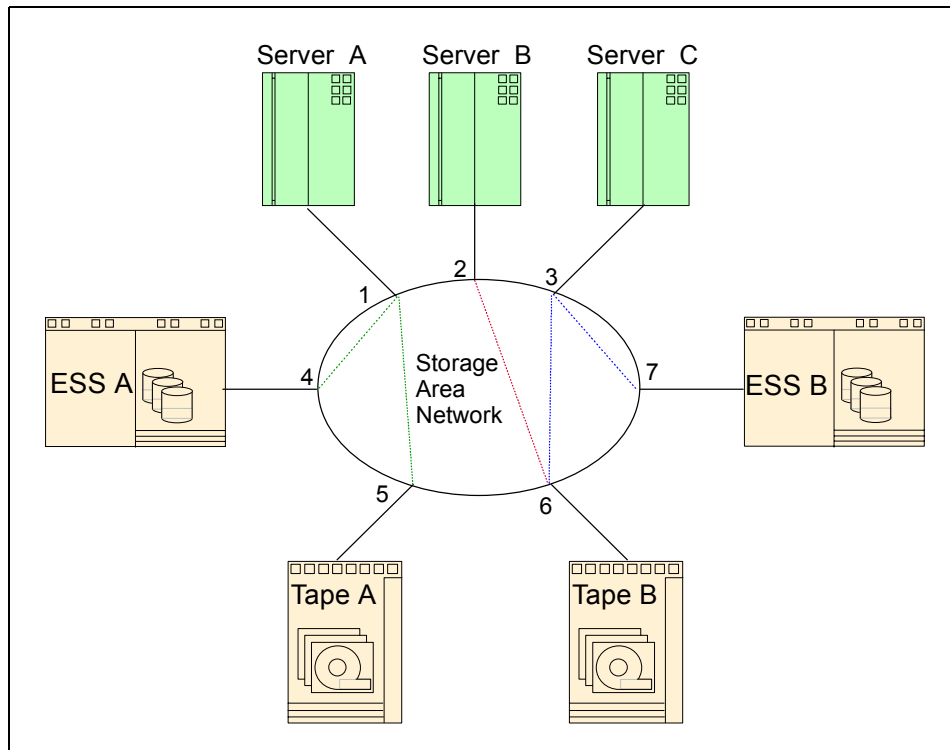


Figure 3-15 Zoning based on the switch port number

In this example, port-based zoning is used to restrict server A to only see storage devices that are zoned to port 1, that is, ports 4 and 5.

Server B is also zoned so that it can only see from port 2 through to port 6.

Server C is zoned so that it can see both ports 6 and 7, even though port 6 is also a member of another zone.

A single port can also belong to multiple zones.

One of the disadvantages of hardware zoning is that devices have to be connected to a specific port, and the whole configuration could become unusable when the device is connected to a different port. In cases where the device connections are not permanent, the use of software zoning is recommended.

### 3.11.2 Software zoning

Software zoning is implemented by the fabric operating systems within the fabric switches. When using software zoning, the members of the zone can be defined using their WWN and WWPN.

With software zoning there is no need to worry about the device's physical connections to the switch. If you use WWNs for the zone members, even when a device is connected to another physical port, it will still remain in the same zoning definition, because the device's WWN remains the same. The zone follows the WWN.

Shown in Figure 3-16 on page 109 is an example of WWN-based zoning. In this example symbolic names (aliases) are defined for each WWN in the SAN to implement the same zoning requirements, as shown in the previous Figure 3-15 on page 107 for port zoning:

- ▶ Zone\_1 contains the aliases *alex*, *ben*, and *sam*, and is restricted to only these devices.
- ▶ Zone\_2 contains the aliases *robyn* and *ellen*, and is restricted to only these devices.
- ▶ Zone\_3 contains the aliases *matthew*, *max*, and *ellen*, and is restricted to only these devices.

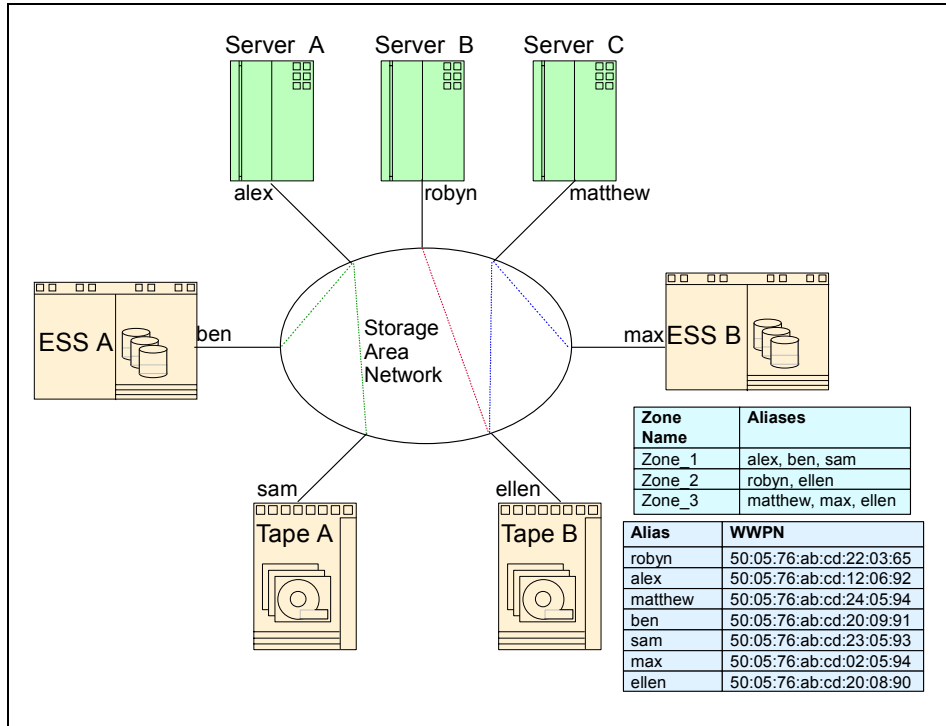


Figure 3-16 Zoning based on the device's WWN

There are some potential security issues with software zoning. For example, a specific host can make a direct connection to the storage device, while doing device discovery, without asking SNS for the information it has in the software zoning table to see which storage devices are allowed for that host.

Hardware zoning provides the highest level of security.

## 3.12 The movement of data

To move data bits with integrity over a physical medium, there must be a mechanism to check that this has happened and integrity has not been compromised. This is provided by a reference clock, which ensures that each bit is received as it was transmitted. In parallel topologies this can be accomplished by using a separate clock or strobe line. As data bits are transmitted in parallel from the source, the strobe line alternates between high or low to signal the receiving end that a full byte has been sent. In the case of 16 and 32-bit wide parallel cable, it would indicate that multiple bytes have been sent.

The reflective differences in fiber-optic cabling mean that modal dispersion may occur. This may result in frames arriving at different times. This bit error rate (BER) is referred to as the jitter budget. No products are entirely jitter free, and this is an important consideration when selecting the components of a SAN.

As serial data transports only have two leads, transmit and receive, clocking is not possible using a separate line. Serial data must carry the reference timing, which means that clocking is embedded in the bit stream.

Embedded clocking, though, can be accomplished by different means. Fibre Channel uses a byte-encoding scheme (which is covered in more detail in 3.12.1, “Data encoding” on page 110) and clock and data recovery (CDR) logic to recover the clock. From this, it determines the data bits that comprise bytes and words.

Gigabit speeds mean that maintaining valid signaling, and ultimately valid data recovery, is essential for data integrity. Fibre Channel standards allow for a single bit error to occur only once in a million, million bits (1 in  $10^{12}$ ). In the real IT world, this equates to a maximum of one bit error every 16 minutes; however, actual occurrence is a lot less frequent than this.

### 3.12.1 Data encoding

In order to transfer data over a high-speed serial interface, the data is encoded prior to transmission and decoded upon reception. The encoding process ensures that sufficient clock information is present in the serial data stream to allow the receiver to synchronize to the embedded clock information and successfully recover the data at the required error rate. This 8b/10b encoding will find errors that a parity check cannot. A parity check will not find even numbers of bit errors, only odd numbers. The 8b/10b encoding logic will find almost all errors.

First developed by IBM, the 8b/10b encoding process will convert each 8-bit byte into two possible 10-bit characters.

This scheme is called 8b/10b encoding, because it refers to the number of data bits input to the encoder and the number of bits output from the encoder.

This scheme is called 8b/10b encoding, because it refers to the number of data bits input to the encoder and the number of bits output from the encoder.

The format of the 8b/10b character is of the format  $A_n.n$ , where:

- ▶ A represents D for data or K for a special character.
- ▶  $nn$  is the decimal value of the lower 5 bits (EDCBA).
- ▶ “.” is a period.

- m is the decimal value of the upper 3 bits (HGF).

We illustrate an encoding example in Figure 3-17.

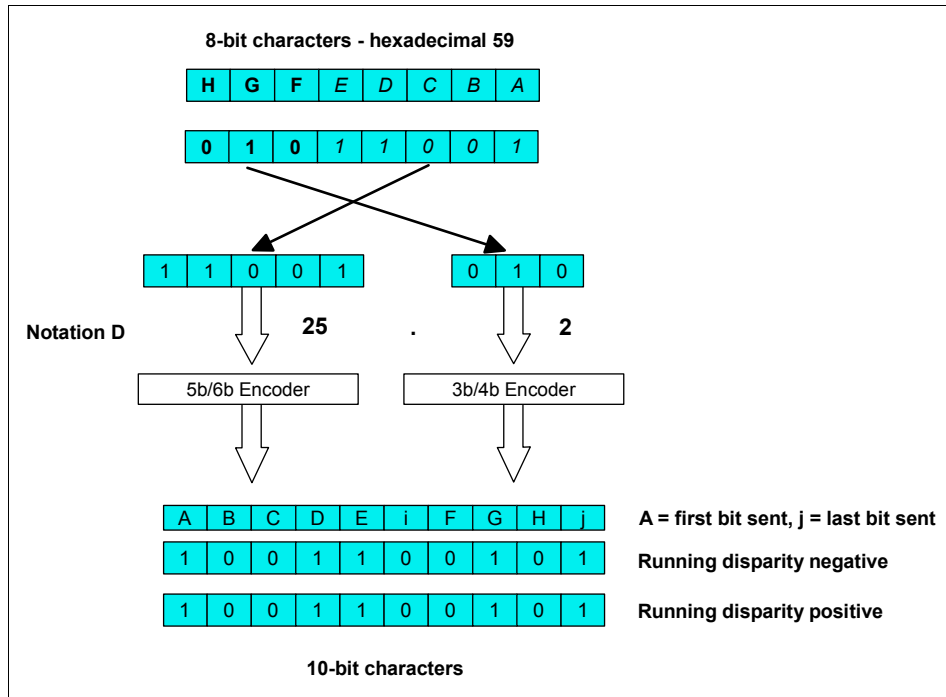


Figure 3-17 8b/10b encoding logic

In the encoding example the following occurs:

1. Hexadecimal representation x'59' is converted to binary: 01011001.
2. Upper three bits are separated from the lower 5 bits: 010 11001.
3. The order is reversed and each group is converted to decimal: 25 2.
4. Letter notation D (for data) is assigned and becomes: D25.2.

### Running disparity

As we illustrate, the conversion of the 8-bit data bytes has resulted in two 10-bit results. The encoder needs to choose one of these results to use. This is achieved by monitoring the running disparity of the previously processed character. For example, if the previous character had a positive disparity, then the next character issued should have an encoded value that represents negative disparity.

You will notice that in our example the encoded value, when the running disparity is either positive or negative, is the same. This is legitimate. In some cases the encoded value will differ, and in others it will be the same.

It should be noticed that in the above example the encoded 10-bit byte has 5 bits that are set and 5 bits that are unset. The only possible results of the 8b/10b encoding are as follows:

- ▶ If 5 bits are set, then the byte is said to have neutral disparity.
- ▶ If 4 bits are set and 6 are unset, then the byte is said to have negative disparity.
- ▶ If 6 bits are set and four are unset, then the byte is said to have positive disparity.

The rules of Fibre Channel define that a byte that is sent cannot take the positive or negative disparity above one unit. Thus, if the current running disparity is negative, then the next byte that is sent must either have:

- ▶ Neutral disparity
  - Keeping the current running disparity negative.
  - The subsequent byte would need to have either neutral or positive disparity.
- ▶ Positive disparity
  - Making the new current running disparity neutral.
  - The subsequent byte could have either positive, negative, or neutral disparity.

**Note:** By this means, at any point in time, at the end of any byte, the number of set bits and unset bits that have passed over a Fibre Channel link will only differ by a maximum of two.

## K28.5

As well as the fact that many 8-bit numbers encode to *two* 10-bit numbers under the 8b/10b encoding scheme, there are some other key features.

Some 10-bit numbers cannot be generated from any 8-bit number. Thus, it should not be possible to see these particular 10-bit numbers as part of a flow of data. This is really a useful fact, as it means that these particular 10-bit numbers can be used by the protocol for signalling or control purposes.

These characters are referred to as Comma characters, and rather than having the prefix D, have the prefix K.



The only one that actually gets used in Fibre Channel is the character known as K28.5, and it has a very special property.

The two 10-bit encodings of K28.5 are shown in Table 3-1.

Table 3-1 10-bit encodings of K28.5

| Name of character | Encoding for current running disparity of |             |
|-------------------|---|-------------|
|                   | Negative                                  | Positive    |
| K28.5             | 001111 1010                               | 110000 0101 |

It was stated above that all of the 10-bit bytes that are possible using the 8b/10b encoding scheme have either four, five, or six bits set. The K28.5 character is special in that it is the only character used in Fibre Channel that has five consecutive bits set or unset; all other characters have four or less consecutive bits of the same setting.

So, what is the significance? There are two things to note here:

- ▶ The first is that these ones and zeroes are actually representing light and dark on the fibre (assuming fiber optic medium). A 010 pattern would effectively be a light pulse between two periods of darkness. A 0110 would be the same, except that the pulse of light would last for twice the length of time.

As the two devices have their own clocking circuitry, the number of consecutive set bits, or consecutive unset bits, becomes important. Let us say that device 1 is sending to device 2 and that the clock on device 2 is running 10 percent faster than that on device 1. If device 1 sent 20 clock cycles worth of set bits, then device 2 would count 22 set bits. (Note that this example is just given to illustrate the point.) The worst possible case that we can have in Fibre Channel is five consecutive bits of the same setting within one byte: The K28.5.

- ▶ The other key thing is that because this is the *only* character with five consecutive bits of the same setting, Fibre Channel hardware can look out for it specifically. As K28.5 is used for control purposes, this is very useful and allows the hardware to be designed for maximum efficiency.

### 3.13 Ordered set, frames, sequences, and exchanges

In order for Fibre Channel devices to be able to communicate with each other, there need to be some strict definitions regarding the way data is sent and received. To this end, some data structures have been defined.

### 3.13.1 Ordered set

Fibre Channel uses a command syntax, known as ordered set, to move the data across the network. The ordered sets are 4-byte transmission words containing data and special characters that have special meaning. Ordered sets provide the availability to obtain bit and word synchronization, which also establishes word boundary alignment. An ordered set always begins with the special character K28.5.

### 3.13.2 Frames

Fibre Channel places a restriction on the length of the data field of a frame at 528 transmission words, which is 2112 bytes. Larger amounts of data must be transmitted in several frames. This larger unit that consists of multiple frames is called sequence. An entire transaction between two ports is made up of sequences administered by an even larger unit called an exchange.

The following rules apply to the framing protocol:

- ▶ A frame is the smallest unit of information transfer.
- ▶ A sequence has at least one frame.
- ▶ An exchange has at least one sequence.

### 3.13.3 Sequences

The information in a sequence moves in one direction, from a source N\_Port to a destination N\_Port. Various fields in the frame header are used to identify the beginning, middle, and end of a sequence, while other fields in the frame header are used to identify the order of frames, in case they arrive out of order at the destination.

### 3.13.4 Exchanges

Two other fields of a frame header identify the exchange ID. An exchange is responsible for managing a single operation that may span several sequences, possibly in opposite directions. The source and destinations can have multiple exchanges active at a time.

Using SCSI as an example, a SCSI task is an exchange. The SCSI task is made up of one or more information units. Each IU is one sequence of exchange. Only one participant sends a sequence at a time.

### 3.13.5 In order and out of order

Some classes of Fibre Channel communication guarantee that the frames will arrive at the destination in the same order in which they were transmitted. Other classes do not. If the frames do arrive in the same order in which they were sent, then we are said to have *in order* delivery of frames

### 3.13.6 Latency

The term *latency* relates to the delay between an action being requested and it actually happening. The areas where we particularly need to be aware of latency in a SAN are:

- ▶ Ports
- ▶ Hubs, switches, directors
- ▶ Long-distance links
- ▶ Inter-switch links
- ▶ ASICs
- ▶ Interblade links in a core switch or director

### 3.13.7 Open Fibre Control: OFC or non-OFC

In order to add a degree of safety, the concept of Open Fibre Control (OFC) was developed. The idea is as follows:

1. A device is powered on and it sends out low-powered light.
2. If it does not receive light back, then it assumes that there is no fibre connected. This is a fail-safe option.
3. When it receives light, it assumes that there is a fibre connected and switches the laser to full power.
4. If one of the devices stops receiving light, then it will revert to the low-power mode.

When a device is transmitting at lower power, it is not able to send data, it is just waiting for a completed optical loop.

The OFC ensures that the laser does not emit light that would exceed the class 1 laser limit when no fiber is connected. Non-OFC devices are guaranteed to be below class 1 limits at all times.

The key factor is that the device at each end of the fiber link must either both be OFC or both be non-OFC.

## 3.14 Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop

Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL) is sufficiently different from Fibre Channel in a switched fabric environment that we are covering some of the specific differences in this section.

### 3.14.1 Loop protocols

To support the shared behavior of the Arbitrated loop, a number of loop-specific protocols are used. These protocols are used to:

- ▶ Initialize the loop and assign addresses.
- ▶ Arbitrate for access to the loop.
- ▶ Open a loop circuit with another port in the loop.
- ▶ Close a loop circuit when two ports have completed their current use of the loop.
- ▶ Implement the access fairness mechanism to ensure that each port has an opportunity to access the loop.

We discuss some of these topics in the sections that follow.

### 3.14.2 Fairness algorithm

The way that the fairness algorithm works is based around the IDLE ordered set, and the way that arbitration is carried out. In order to determine that the loop is not in use, an NL\_Port waits until it sees an IDLE go by and it can arbitrate for the loop by sending an RB Primitive Signal ordered set. If a higher priority device arbitrates before the first NL\_Port sees its own ARB come by, then it loses the arbitration; but if it sees that its own ARB has gone all the way around the loop, then it has won arbitration. It can then open a communication to another NL\_Port. When it has finished, it can close the connection and either rearbitrate for the loop or send one or more IDLEs. If it complies with the fairness algorithm then it will take the option of sending IDLEs. That will force lower priority NL\_Ports to successfully arbitrate for sending IDLEs, and that will allow lower priority NL\_Ports to successfully arbitrate for the loop. However, there is no rule that forces any device to operate the fairness algorithm.

### 3.14.3 Loop addressing

An NL\_Port, like an N\_Port, has a 24-bit port address. If no switch connection exists, the two upper bytes of this port address are zeroes (x'00 00') and referred to as a private loop. The devices on the loop have no connection with the outside world. If the loop is attached to a fabric and NL\_Port supports a fabric login, the

upper two bytes are assigned a positive value by the switch. We call this mode a public loop.

As fabric-capable NL\_Ports are members of both a local loop and a greater fabric community, a 24-bit address is needed as an identifier in the network. In the case of public loop assignment, the value of the upper two bytes represents the loop identifier, and this will be common to all NL\_Ports on the same loop that performed login to the fabric.

In both public and private Arbitrated Loops, the last byte of the 24-bit port address refers to the Arbitrated Loop physical address (AL\_PA). The AL\_PA is acquired during initialization of the loop and may, in the case of fabric-capable loop devices, be modified by the switch during login.

The total number of the AL\_PAs available for Arbitrated Loop addressing is 127, which is based on the requirements of 8b/10b running disparity between frames.

As a frame terminates with an end-of-frame character (EOF), this will force the current running disparity negative. In the Fibre Channel standard, each transmission word between the end of one frame and the beginning of another frame should also leave the running disparity negative. If all 256 possible 8-bit bytes are sent to the 8b/10b encoder, 134 emerge with neutral disparity characters. Of these 134, seven are reserved for use by Fibre Channel. The 127 neutral disparity characters left have been assigned as AL\_PAs. Put another way, the 127 AL\_PA limit is simply the maximum number, minus reserved values, of neutral disparity addresses that can be assigned for use by the loop. This does not imply that we recommend this amount, or load, but only that it is possible.

Arbitrated Loop will assign priority to AL\_PAs, based on numeric value. The lower the numeric value, the higher the priority is.

It is the Arbitrated Loop initialization that ensures each attached device is assigned a unique AL\_PA. The possibility for address conflicts only arises when two separated loops are joined together without initialization.

## 3.15 Emerging technologies

Some of the new technologies emerging in the field of storage networking are:

- ▶ iSCSI
- ▶ iFCP
- ▶ FCIP

We overview them in the topics that follow.

### 3.15.1 iSCSI

Internet SCSI (iSCSI) is a transport protocol that carries SCSI commands from an initiator to a target. It is a data storage networking protocol that transports standard Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) requests over the standard TCP/IP networking technology.

iSCSI enables the implementation of IP-based storage area networks, enabling customers to use the same networking technologies from the box level to the Internet for both storage and data networks. As it uses TCP/IP, iSCSI is also well suited to run over almost any physical network. By eliminating the need for a second network technology just for storage, iSCSI will lower the costs of deploying networked storage and increase its potential market.

One of the major advantages is that as iSCSI carries SCSI commands over existing IP networks, it has an innate and important ability to facilitate the transfer of data over both the Internet and intranets, and to manage storage over long distances.

### 3.15.2 iFCP

Internet Fibre Channel Protocol (iFCP) is a mechanism for transmitting data to and from Fibre Channel storage devices in a SAN, or on the Internet using TCP/IP.

iFCP gives the ability to incorporate already existing SCSI and Fibre Channel networks into the Internet. iFCP is able to be used in tandem with existing Fibre Channel protocols, such as FCIP, or it can replace them. Whereas FCIP is a tunneled solution, iFCP is an FCP routed solution.

The appeal of iFCP is that for customers that have a wide range of FC devices, and who want to be able to connect these to the IP network, iFCP gives the ability to permit this. iFCP can interconnect FC SANs with IP networks, and also allows customers to use the TCP/IP network in place of the SAN.

### 3.15.3 FCIP

Fibre Channel over IP (FCIP) is also known as Fibre Channel tunneling or storage tunneling. It is a method for allowing the transmission of Fibre Channel information to be tunneled through the IP network. Because most organizations already have an existing IP infrastructure, the attraction of being able to link geographically dispersed SANs, at a relatively low cost, is enormous.

FCIP encapsulates Fibre Channel block data and subsequently transports it over a TCP socket. TCP/IP services are utilized to establish connectivity between

remote SANs. Any congestion control and management, as well as data error and data loss recovery, is handled by TCP/IP services, and does not affect FC fabric services.

The major point with FCIP is that it does not replace FC with IP, it simply allows deployments of FC fabrics using IP tunnelling.







# The IBM TotalStorage SAN Portfolio

This chapter provides an overview of the IBM TotalStorage SAN components that IBM either OEMs, or has a reseller agreement for. We include some products that have been withdrawn from marketing, as it is likely that they will still be encountered.

## 4.1 Why an IBM TotalStorage SAN

IBM TotalStorage SAN solutions provide integrated small and medium business (SMB) and enterprise solutions with multi-protocol local, campus, metropolitan, and global storage networking. IBM provides the choice of Brocade, Cisco, CNT, Emulex, and McDATA switches and directors. IBM SAN solutions are offered with worldwide service and end-to-end support by IBM Business Partners and IBM Global Services.

## 4.2 Entry SAN switches

These switches provide solutions for the SMB customer:

- ▶ Very cost conscious SMB customers with limited technical skills
- ▶ Integrated, simple storage consolidation and data protection solutions
  - Homogenous Windows/Linux servers
  - xSeries Server sales channels
  - IBM DS Series and LTO Storage
  - High availability with dual fabric deployment
- ▶ Support of IBM TotalStorage devices and IBM Tivoli Storage Manager
- ▶ Integrated solutions with worldwide IBM support.

### 4.2.1 IBM TotalStorage Switch L10

For less complex SAN environments, with fewer servers and storage arrays, single switch or dual cascaded switches offer redundancy and performance with minimal administration and lower cost than larger directors. One option for these smaller infrastructures is an entry-level switch such as the IBM TotalStorage Storage Switch L10 (2006-L10).

The IBM TotalStorage Storage Switch L10 is a one-half width, 1U rack height, ten-port switch, as shown in Figure 4-1 on page 123. This entry ten-port storage switch includes zoning and an integrated Web server. The L10 switch is supported with xSeries and BladeCenter servers. Two storage switches may be cascaded for expanded solutions with Microsoft Windows NT, 2000 Server, and Cluster Service (MSCS); Red Hat; and SUSE LINUX and Novell NetWare.



Figure 4-1 L10

The features that the L10 provides are:

- ▶ Simple-to-use infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions that are scalable from three to fourteen servers with cascaded switches.
- ▶ Connectivity for up to eighteen devices when cascaded with a second L10 switch.
- ▶ One step, port-based zoning.
- ▶ Automatic trunking for inter-switch link (ISL) failover.
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with a minimum number of components and intelligent management of network changes.
- ▶ An intuitive integrated management Web server with smart settings helps simplify administration.
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 or 2 gigabit per second throughput on all ports.
- ▶ Offers a new level of price performance for first-time storage area network users.
- ▶ Offers high-density packaging and small form-factor pluggable transceivers that provide ten ports in a one-half rack width with a 1U rack height.
- ▶ Flexible Fibre Channel connectivity to:
  - IBM TotalStorage DS400
  - IBM TotalStorage DS4100, DS4300, and DS4500 Storage Servers
  - IBM TotalStorage Ultrium Tape Library 3582
  - IBM TotalStorage Scalable Tape Library 3583
  - IBM Modular Tape Library Model 4560SLX with Ultrium 2 LTO or SDLT tape drives

## 4.2.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H08

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H08 (2005-H08), with its next generation switch technology, provides improved availability capabilities, 8-port, 2 gigabit per second fully non-blocking performance, and advanced intelligence features. This entry-level switch with its advanced zoning can be attached into an IBM

TotalStorage SAN Switch fabric for Microsoft Windows NT, 2000, and UNIX server clustering. A full fabric upgrade feature enables use in large core-to-edge fabrics. The H08 switch is well-suited to address small and medium business customer requirements for infrastructure simplification and improved business continuity. The H08 is shown in Figure 4-2.



Figure 4-2 H08

It is designed to be fully interoperable with other members of the IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch family. These are the switch main features:

- ▶ Offers 8-port entry-fabric switch with advanced zoning, ability to attach to two IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch fabric for Microsoft Windows, and UNIX server clustering with wide range of SFP transceiver features.
- ▶ Upgradable to full-enterprise fabric capability for use in large core-to-edge fabrics.
- ▶ Provides up to 2 Gigabit/second (Gbps) non-blocking performance. With inter-switch link (ISL) trunking, four links can be combined with an aggregate speed of up to 8 Gigabits per second.
- ▶ Uses WEBTOOLS for management of small SAN fabrics. The Fabric Manager feature and open fabric interfaces can help simplify management of large core-to-edge SAN fabrics.
- ▶ Offers Advanced Security features with extensive, policy-based security capabilities.
- ▶ Entry-fabric switch with advanced zoning and ability to attach to four IBM TotalStorage® SAN Switch fabric for Microsoft® Windows NT®, Windows® 2000, and UNIX server clustering.
- ▶ Upgradable to full-enterprise capabilities for use in large core-to-edge fabrics.
- ▶ Offers 8-port Fibre Channel switch with wide range of Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceiver features.
- ▶ Improved availability capabilities include hot code activation and single field replaceable unit, FRU design.
- ▶ Provides up to 2 Gigabit/sec (Gbps) non-blocking performance.

- ▶ Uses WEBTOOLS, Fabric Manager, and open fabric interfaces, which can help simplify management of small SAN fabrics and large core-to-edge SAN fabrics.
- ▶ Offers advanced fabric service features such as end-to-end performance monitoring and inter-switch link (ISL) trunking with aggregate speed up to 8 Gbps.
- ▶ Offers Advanced Security feature with extensive, policy-based security capabilities.

### 4.2.3 IBM TotalStorage SAN12M-1

The IBM TotalStorage SAN12M-1 (2026-E12) is a 2 Gbps fabric switch with FlexPort scalability from 4 to 12 ports for affordable, easy to manage for SMB infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. It is shown in Figure 4-3.



Figure 4-3 SAN12M-1

It is designed to provide high availability and advanced technology with the minimum number of components, and includes concurrent firmware activation. The high-density packaging and small form factor pluggable (SFP) transceivers provide 12 ports in a 1U high rack space. Some of the main features are:

- ▶ Offers 8-port entry-fabric switch with advanced zoning, ability to attach to two IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch fabric for Microsoft Windows and UNIX server clustering with wide range of SFP transceiver features.
- ▶ Upgradable to full-enterprise fabric capability for use in large core-to-edge fabrics.
- ▶ Provides up to 2 Gigabit/second (Gbps) non-blocking performance. With inter-switch link (ISL) trunking, four links can be combined with an aggregate speed of up to 8 Gigabits per second.
- ▶ Uses WEBTOOLS for management of small SAN fabrics. The Fabric Manager feature and open fabric interfaces can help simplify management of large core-to-edge SAN fabrics.
- ▶ Offers Advanced Security features with extensive, policy-based security capabilities.

- ▶ Simple-to-use entry-level infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer xSeries, iSeries, and pSeries.
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with a minimum number of components and HotCAT™ online code activation.
- ▶ Integrated browser-based SAN pilot management for first-time storage area network (SAN) users.
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 and 2 gigabit per second (Gbps) throughput on all ports.
- ▶ Flexible scalability with FlexPort and full fabric capabilities.
- ▶ Offers an excellent price performance for first-time SAN users.

## 4.3 Midrange SAN switches

The IBM Midrange SAN switches provide scalable and affordable SMB and enterprise solutions.

- ▶ Cost conscious SMB customers with limited technical skills
- ▶ Integrated, scalable, high-availability IBM Virtualization family solutions
- ▶ Heterogeneous Windows, Linux, iSeries, UNIX, and mainframe servers
- ▶ xSeries, iSeries, pSeries, and zSeries Server sales channels
- ▶ IBM FASTT, ESS, LTO, and ETS storage
- ▶ Support the IBM TotalStorage Virtualization family, TotalStorage devices, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager, SAN Manager, SRM and Multiple Device Manager
- ▶ Integrated solutions at affordable prices with worldwide IBM support and IBM TotalStorage Solution Center (TSSC) services

### 4.3.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H16

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H16 (2005-H16), with its next generation switch technology, provides improved availability capabilities, 16-port, 2-gigabit per second fully non-blocking performance, and advanced intelligence features. It is an entry-level fabric switch with advanced zoning that can be attached in a four switch fabric for Microsoft Windows NT, 2000, and UNIX server clustering. The full fabric upgrade feature enables use in large core-to-edge fabrics.

It is well-suited to address small and medium business customer requirements for infrastructure simplification, and improved business continuity. The H16 is shown in Figure 4-4 on page 127.

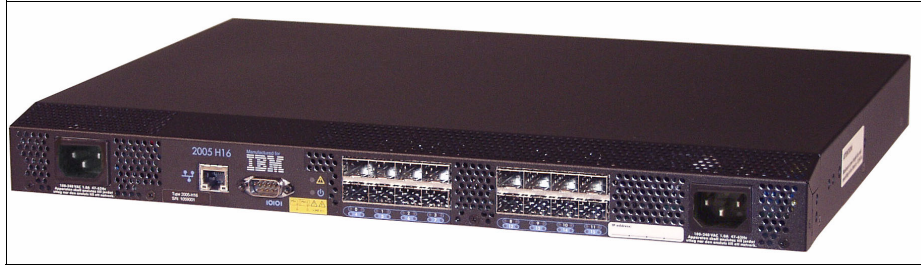


Figure 4-4 H16

It is designed to be fully interoperable with other members of the IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch family. It provides the ability to configure a wide range of scalable solutions that help address SMB demands for affordability. It is simple to manage and offers integrated heterogeneous open server SANs.

- ▶ Offers 16-port entry-fabric switch with advanced zoning, ability to attach to two IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch fabrics for Microsoft Windows and UNIX server clustering with a wide range of SFP transceiver features.
- ▶ Upgradable to full-enterprise fabric capability for use in large core-to-edge fabrics.
- ▶ Improved availability capabilities include hot code activation and single field replaceable unit, FRU design.
- ▶ Provides up to 2 Gigabit/second (Gbps) non-blocking performance. With inter-switch link (ISL) trunking, four links can be combined with an aggregate speed of up to 8 Gigabits per second.
- ▶ Uses WEBTOOLS for management of small SAN fabrics. The Fabric Manager feature and open fabric interfaces can help simplify management of large core-to-edge SAN fabrics.
- ▶ Offers Advanced Security features with extensive, policy-based security capabilities.
- ▶ Entry-fabric switch with advanced zoning and ability to attach to four IBM TotalStorage® SAN Switch fabric for Microsoft® Windows NT®, Windows® 2000, and UNIX server clustering.
- ▶ Upgradable to full-enterprise capabilities for use in large core-to-edge fabrics.
- ▶ Offers 16-port Fibre Channel switches with a wide range of Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceiver features.
- ▶ Improved availability capabilities include hot code activation and single field replaceable unit, FRU design.
- ▶ Provides up to 2 Gbps non-blocking performance.

- ▶ Uses WEBTOOLS, Fabric Manager, and open fabric interfaces, which can help simplify management of small SAN fabrics and large core-to-edge SAN fabrics.
- ▶ Offers advanced fabric service features such as end-to-end performance monitoring and inter-switch link (ISL) trunking with an aggregate speed up to 8 Gbps.
- ▶ Offers the Advanced Security feature with extensive, policy-based security capabilities.

### 4.3.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch F32

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch F32 (2109-F32) provides up to 32-port, 2 Gbps open server and mainframe, midrange, and enterprise solutions. All these are designed with a common architecture and an integrated enterprise SAN management capability. It is supported by the broadest range of IBM open server and storage devices. Compatibility with the Brocade Silksworm family of switches can enable interoperability with a wide range of non-IBM server and storage devices. The F32 is shown in Figure 4-5.



Figure 4-5 F32

These switches provide the performance, scalability, high availability, and manageability required to scale SAN fabrics up to thousands of devices. It affords the opportunity to initially deploy separate SAN fabrics at the departmental and data center levels, and then to interconnect them into an integrated IBM TotalStorage Enterprise SAN as experience and requirements grow and change. The main features are:

- ▶ SAN fabric simplification with up to 50 percent fewer device connections, ISL links, and fabric switches to manage than with 1 Gigabit per second fabric switches. Enterprise SAN directors.
- ▶ Common enterprise SAN fabrics simplify deployment, management, and network growth.
- ▶ Industry standard performance with 1 and 2 Gbps throughput. With Inter-switch link (ISL) trunking, four links can be combined with an aggregate speed of up to 8 Gbps per second.



- ▶ Can be used as a departmental switch, a core fabric switch, or an edge switch with large enterprise SANs.
- ▶ Offers Advanced Security with comprehensive, policy-based security capabilities.
- ▶ Provides a broad range of IBM open server and storage support including fabric, loop, and private loop attachments.
- ▶ Offers a 32-port Fibre Channel switch with rack space saving Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers.
- ▶ Offers advanced fabric services such as end-to-end performance monitoring and advanced zoning.

### 4.3.3 IBM TotalStorage SAN32B-2 fabric switch

The IBM TotalStorage SAN32B-2 (2005-B32) high-performance fabric switch provides 16, 24, and 32 port, 4 Gbps switching for open server midrange and enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity SAN solutions. It provides full interoperability with IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switches and directors that help protect switch investments. This is shown in Figure 4-6

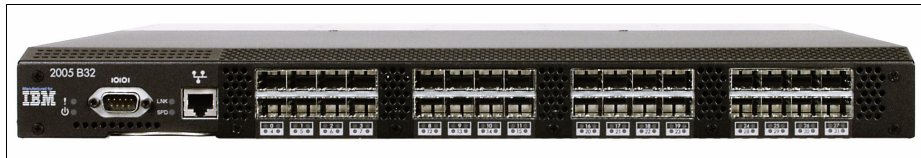


Figure 4-6 SAN32B-2

IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switches and directors provide the performance, scalability, high availability and manageability required to evolve entry SAN solutions into large enterprise SAN solutions. It gives the opportunity to initially deploy separate SAN solutions at the departmental and data center levels and then to consolidate them into an integrated enterprise SAN as experience and requirements grow and change. The main features are:

- ▶ Simple-to-use midrange and enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity SAN solutions.
- ▶ Designed for high-performance with 4 Gigabit per second (Gbps) ports and enhanced inter-switch link (ISL) trunking with up to 32 Gbps per data path.
- ▶ Pay-as-you-grow scalability with Ports on Demand features.
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with redundant, hot-swappable fans and power supplies and non-disruptive software upgrades.

- ▶ Multiple-management options for first-time storage area network (SAN) users and complex enterprise SAN consolidation solutions.
- ▶ Interoperability with IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switch family helps protect switch investment.

#### 4.3.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN24M-1

The IBM TotalStorage SAN24M-1 (2026-224) is a 2 Gbps fabric switch with FlexPort scalability from 8 to 24 ports for affordable, easy-to-manage midrange SMB infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. It can be used with enterprise solutions for integration of IBM TotalStorage Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL) tape devices with m-type enterprise-to-edge SANs. This is shown in Figure 4-7.



Figure 4-7 SAN24M-1

The switch is designed to provide high availability with redundant, hot-swappable fans, power supplies, optics, and concurrent firmware activation. High-density packaging and small form factor pluggable (SFP) transceivers provide 24 ports in 1U high rack space.

- ▶ Simple-to-use midrange infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer xSeries, iSeries, and pSeries
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 and 2 Gbps throughput on all ports
- ▶ Integrated browser-based SANpilot management for first-time storage area network (SAN) users
- ▶ Enterprise-to-edge SAN management for advanced enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions including disk and tape SAN island consolidation
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with a minimum number of components and HotCAT™ online code activation
- ▶ Flexible scalability with FlexPort and full fabric capabilities

- ▶ Designed to support high availability with redundant, hot-swappable fans and power supplies and HotCAT online code activation
- ▶ Pay-as-you-grow with flexible scalability with FlexPort feature IBM TotalStorage midrange solutions

### 4.3.5 IBM TotalStorage SAN32M-1

The IBM TotalStorage SAN32M-1 (2027-232) is a 2 Gbps FICON and Fibre Channel switch with scalability from 8 to 32 ports for easy-to-manage midrange infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. The SAN32M-1 can be used as an edge switch for highly scalable m-type enterprise-to-edge SAN solutions. This is shown in Figure 4-8.

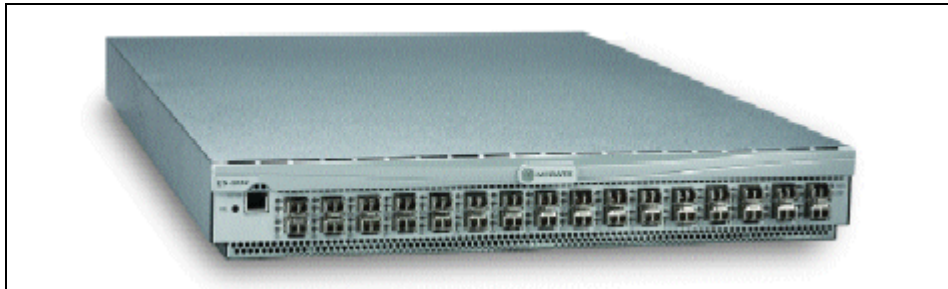


Figure 4-8 SAN32M-1

The switch is designed to provide high availability with redundant, hot-swappable fans, power supplies, optics, and concurrent firmware activation. High-density packaging and small form factor pluggable (SFP) transceivers provide 32 ports in 1.5U high rack space. The main features are:

- ▶ Simple-to-use midrange infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer xSeries, iSeries, and pSeries
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 and 2 Gbps throughput on all ports
- ▶ Integrated browser-based SANpilot management for first-time storage area network (SAN) users
- ▶ Enterprise-to-edge SAN management for advanced enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions, including disk and tape SAN island consolidation
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with a minimum number of components and HotCAT™ online code activation
- ▶ FICON Management Server (CUP) for automated zSeries FICON operation

- ▶ Enterprise-to-edge storage area network (SAN) management for advanced enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions, including mainframe FICON® disk and tape storage
- ▶ Integrated browser-based SANpilot management for first-time SAN users
- ▶ Pay-as-you-grow with flexible scalability with FlexPort feature IBM TotalStorage midrange solutions

### 4.3.6 Cisco MDS 9120 and 9140 Multilayer Fabric Switch

The Cisco MDS 9120 and 9140 Multilayer Fabric Switches (2061-020 and 2061-040) provide 20 and 40 ports, with 2 Gbps performance, space saving design, and improved reliability capabilities. The host-optimized and target-optimized Fibre Channel ports help to reduce TCO. Intelligent networking services such as Virtual SAN (VSAN) and comprehensive security help simplify entry and midrange SAN management and integration into large core-to-edge SANs.

Shown in Figure 4-9 is the MDS 9120 switch.



*Figure 4-9 9120*

Shown in Figure 4-10 is the MDS 9140 switch.



*Figure 4-10 9140*

The main features are:

- ▶ Entry and midrange Fibre Channel SAN solutions.
- ▶ Up to 2 Gbps per port throughput and PortChannel support high-performance core-edge SAN deployments.
- ▶ Simplified SAN management with host-optimized and target-optimized ports can help to reduce total cost of ownership.
- ▶ MDS 9000 inter-family compatibility supports scalability and consistent service as the SAN grows.
- ▶ Compact 20 and 40 port design with high-availability capabilities.

- ▶ Built-in intelligent network services can help simplify SAN management and reduce total cost of ownership.
- ▶ Comprehensive security features support SAN consolidation.
- ▶ Virtual SAN (VSAN) capability is designed to create virtual SAN islands on a single physical fabric.
- ▶ Offers interoperability with a broad range of IBM servers as well as disk and tape storage devices.

### 4.3.7 Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Multilayer Fabric Switch

The Cisco MDS 9216i Multilayer Fabric Switch is designed to support business continuance solutions in a cost-effective manner. It offers a multiprotocol capable integrated Fibre Channel and IP Storage Services architecture including fourteen 2-Gbps Fibre Channel interfaces for high-performance SAN connectivity, and two 1-Gbps Ethernet ports enabling Fibre Channel over IP (FCIP) and iSCSI storage services. The 9216i base model includes iSCSI capability to extend the benefits of Fibre Channel SAN-based storage to Ethernet-attached servers at a lower cost than Fibre Channel interconnect alone. Additionally, the MDS 9216i offers optional FCIP activation for remote SAN extension. This capability can help simplify data protection and business continuance strategies by enabling backup, remote replication, and other disaster recovery services over wide area network (WAN) distances using open-standard FCIP tunneling. The 9216i is shown in Figure 4-11.



Figure 4-11 9216i

The Cisco MDS 9216A Multilayer Fabric Switch is designed for building mission-critical enterprise SANs where scalability, multilayer capability, resiliency, robust security, and ease of management are required. The 9216A base model includes an updated internal backplane, designed with built-in scalability and growth options to accommodate next-generation Cisco line cards.

The internal backplane within the 9216A base model provides support for next-generation advanced functionality.

Shown in Figure 4-12 is the MDS 9216A switch.



Figure 4-12 9216A

Both models highlight an advanced modular design, to provide built-in scalability and support future growth by featuring an enhanced internal backplane design, and accommodate expansion with the full line of optional switching modules and IP multiprotocol switching modules. The 9216i and 9216A models are designed to provide 1/2 Gbps Fibre Channel compatibility and performance with advanced intelligence to address security, performance, and manageability requirements to consolidate geographically dispersed SAN islands into a large SAN enterprise.

The main features are:

- ▶ Integrated IP and Fibre Channel SAN solutions
- ▶ Simplified large storage network management and improved SAN fabric utilization can help reduce total cost of ownership
- ▶ Provides throughput of up to 2Gbps per port and up to 32 Gbps with each PortChannel ISL connection
- ▶ Offers scalability
- ▶ Offers Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI or FCIP connectivity
- ▶ Features modular design with excellent availability capabilities
- ▶ Uses intelligent network services to help simplify storage area network (SAN) management and reduce total cost
- ▶ Helps provide security for large enterprise SANs
- ▶ Includes Virtual SAN (VSAN) capability for SAN consolidation into virtual SAN islands on a single physical fabric
- ▶ Offers compatibility with a broad range of IBM servers as well as disk and tape storage devices

## 4.4 Enterprise SAN directors

The IBM Enterprise SAN director class provides:

- ▶ Highest availability and scalability, and intelligent software to simplify management of complex, integrated enterprise SANs
- ▶ Heterogeneous Windows, Linux, iSeries, UNIX, and mainframe servers
  - xSeries, iSeries, pSeries, and zSeries Server sales channels
  - IBM FAStT, ESS, LTO, and ETS storage
- ▶ Supports the IBM TotalStorage Virtualization family and storage systems, IBM Tivoli Storage Manager, SAN Manager Storage Resource Manager, and Multiple Device Manager
- ▶ Offers customized solutions with competitive prices, worldwide IBM support, and IGS and IBM TSSC services

### 4.4.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN Director M14

The IBM TotalStorage SAN Director M14 (2109-M14) with its next-generation director technology is designed to provide improved performance, enhanced scalability, and has a design ready for future higher performance and expanded capability features. The director is well-suited to address enterprise SAN customer requirements for infrastructure simplification and improved business continuity. It is also designed to be interoperable with other members of the IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switch family. It can be used to configure a wide range of highly scalable solutions that address today's demands for integrated, heterogeneous mainframe and open server enterprise SANs. This is shown in Figure 4-13 on page 136.





Figure 4-13 M14

The director provides 32–128 ports in a single fabric; 2 Gbps fabric switching for Windows NT/2000 and UNIX; FICON switching for mainframe server clustering; and provides infrastructure simplification alongside business continuity solutions. The base director includes zoning, WEBTOOLS, Fabric Watch, ISL-Trunking, and Performance Monitoring. Its Fabric Manager feature simplifies complex fabric management. The main features the M14 provides are:

- ▶ High-availability director with built-in redundancy designed to avoid single points of failure.
- ▶ Highly scalable director with 32 to 128 ports in a single domain.
- ▶ FICON Director switching with Fibre Channel/FICON intermix, FICON CUP (Control Unit Port), and FICON cascading.
- ▶ Interoperable with IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switches.



- ▶ Offers advanced fabric services such as end-to-end performance monitoring and fabric-wide health monitoring.
- ▶ Remote Switch Activation extends the distance of SAN fabrics by enabling two Fibre Channel switches to interconnect over a Wide Area Network (WAN).
- ▶ Fabric Manager helps simplify management, reduce cost of administration, and accelerate deployment and provisioning.

The M14 is designed to provide Fibre Channel connectivity to:

- ▶ IBM iSeries, zSeries, pSeries, xSeries
- ▶ Other Intel processor-based servers with Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows 2003, NetWare, and Linux
- ▶ Selected Sun and HP Servers
- ▶ IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server (ESS), IBM TotalStorage DS8000 Series, TotalStorage DS6000 Series, TotalStorage DS4000 Series
- ▶ IBM TotalStorage 3590 and 3592 Tape Drives and IBM TotalStorage 3494 Tape Library
- ▶ IBM TotalStorage 3582 and 3583 Ultrium Tape Libraries and IBM TotalStorage 3584 UltraScalable Tape Library
- ▶ IBM TotalStorage SAN Switches

### **Inter-switch link trunking**

As a standard feature this enables as many as four Fibre Channel links between the M14 and M12 directors, b-type switches, to be combined to form a single logical ISL with an aggregate speed of up to 8 Gbps. ISL trunking provides additional scalability by enabling M14 and M12 directors to be networked in an expandable core, in a core-to-edge SAN fabric.

### **Performance monitoring**

This is another standard feature that provides support for frame filtering-based performance monitoring tools for enhanced end-to-end performance monitoring. As core-to-edge SAN fabrics scale up to thousands of devices, ISL trunking and frame filtering can help simplify storage management and reduce the overall cost of the storage infrastructure.

### **FICON Director operation**

FICON Director switching includes FICON servers, intermixed FICON and Open servers and FICON cascading between two directors. FICON CUP Activation provides a Control Unit port (CUP) in-band management function designed to allow mainframe applications to perform configurations, monitoring,

management, and statistics collection. These applications include System Automation for OS/390 (SA/390), Dynamic Channel Management Facility (DCM) and Resource Measurement Facility (RMF™), Enhanced Call Home, and RAS capabilities, all of which can help simplify management. Hardware enforced FICON and FCP port zoning enhances separation with intermix operations. ISL trunking, with self-optimizing traffic management, can enhance the performance and availability of FICON cascading. Advanced Security Activation is required for FICON cascading. The FICON CUP and Security Activation Bundle provides an affordable bundle of these features.

### **Advanced Security**

This feature can help create a secure storage networking infrastructure required to control and manage fabric access. External threats and internal operational events can compromise valuable enterprise data assets and create data integrity exposures.

### **Advanced Security Activation**

This feature can help create a secure storage networking infrastructure required for multiple protocol operation and SAN island consolidation. Advanced Security extends basic fabric security provided by Advanced Zoning hardware-enforced WWN zoning. It provides a policy-based security system for IBM SAN Switch fabrics with Fabric OS Versions 3 and 4.

### **WEBTOOLS**

This is designed to provide a comprehensive set of management tools that support a Web browser interface for flexible, easy-to-use integration into existing enterprise storage management structures. WEBTOOLS supports security and data integrity by limiting (zoning) host system attachment to specific storage systems and devices.

## **4.4.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN140M**

The IBM TotalStorage SAN140M (2027-140) is a 2 Gbps FICON and Fibre Channel director with scalability from 16 to 140 ports for the highest availability, enterprise infrastructure simplification, and business continuity solutions. The SAN24M-1 and SAN32M-1 can be used as edge switches for highly scalable m-type enterprise-to-edge SAN solutions.

The IBM TotalStorage SAN140M is shown in Figure 4-14 on page 139.



Figure 4-14 SAN140M

The main features are:

- ▶ Simple-to-use enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer xSeries, iSeries, and pSeries
- ▶ Provides highly scalable 16–140 port switching backbone for advanced enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions, including mainframe FICON disk and tape storage
- ▶ Designed to support highest-availability with redundancy of all active components including hot-swappable processors, fans, and power supplies, HotCAT™ online code activation and call-home with EFCM software
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 and 2 Gbps throughput on all ports
- ▶ Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager, FICON Management Server (CUP) and Open Systems Management Server software help simplify management of complex SAN infrastructures
- ▶ Easy-to-manage enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer® xSeries, iSeries, pSeries and zSeries servers

### 4.4.3 IBM TotalStorage SANC40M

The IBM TotalStorage SANC40M (2027-C40) replaces the McDATA Fabriccenter FC-512) and provides a space-saving cabinet for IBM TotalStorage SAN m-type directors and switches. It features redundant power distribution for high-availability directors, space for 1U rack mount server and 39U for directors and switches, and its cabling flexibility supports up to 512 Fibre Channel ports.

Its design provides the required airflow and power for high-availability operation. The cabinet comes complete with 28 individual power connections or 14 power connections with dual independent power distribution and dual line cords.

The cabinet supports up to two IBM TotalStorage SAN256M directors; three IBM TotalStorage SAN140M directors; or a combination of up to 14 high-availability, dual power-connected IBM TotalStorage SAN m-type switches and directors. Its main features are:

- ▶ Space-saving cabinet for IBM TotalStorage SAN m-type directors and switches
- ▶ Dual power distribution system designed for high availability
- ▶ Space for 1U rack mount management server and 39U for directors and switches
- ▶ Future-ready design
- ▶ Flexible configuration options

#### **Flexible configuration options**

The Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager (EFCM) software is designed to provide an enterprise-to-edge view of the entire SAN, allowing IT administrators to monitor and control all switched enterprise components from a single console.

A 1U rack mount management server with the EFCM software helps centralize management of multiple directors in the fabric and monitors their operations. The server provides two Ethernet LAN connections—one for a private LAN that supports communication with the directors and switches, and the second for an optional connection to a corporate intranet for remote workstation access. The server supports continuous director monitoring, logging, and alerting; centralizes log files with the EFCM software, configuration databases and firmware distribution. It supports centralized “call-home”, e-mail, service, and support operations. As many as 48 directors and switches can be managed from a single server, and up to eight concurrent users can access the server.

A 24-port Ethernet hub (included and located in the IBM TotalStorage SANC40M cabinet) supports the two connections required by the high-availability function in the IBM TotalStorage SAN256M and IBM TotalStorage SAN140M directors. This

hub also supports multiple directors and switches connected to a private LAN. One LAN connection is required for each control processor card in the directors.

#### 4.4.4 IBM TotalStorage SAN256M

The IBM TotalStorage SAN256M high-availability enterprise director (2027-256) provides 10 Gbps backbone connections, 64-256 ports 2 Gbps fabric switching for Windows NT/2000 and UNIX; and FICON switching for mainframe server clustering, infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. The Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager provides integrated management of complex IBM SAN m-type tiered enterprise fabrics. The SAN256M is shown in Figure 4-15.

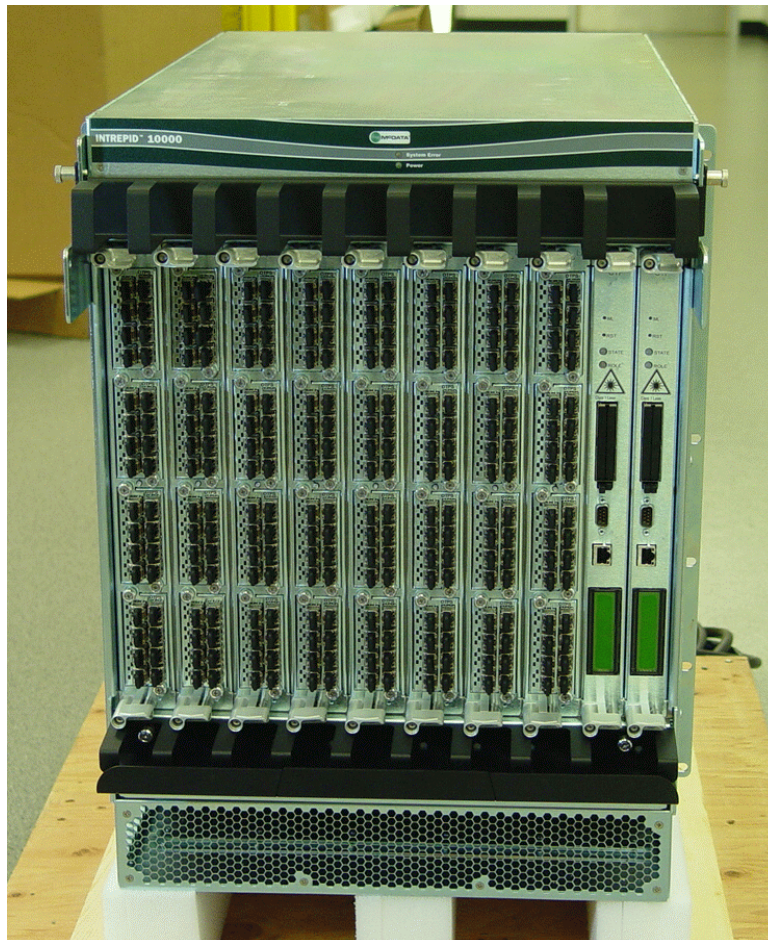


Figure 4-15 SAN256M

A wide range of IBM TotalStorage enterprise storage area network (SAN) infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions can be created with the IBM TotalStorage SAN 256M enterprise director.

These business continuity solutions include data protection with IBM TotalStorage Ultrium 2 Linear Tape-Open (LTO) and IBM TotalStorage 3592 Tape Drives and tape libraries with IBM Tivoli Storage manager data protection software. The standard director features and capabilities may be combined with IBM TotalStorage disk, tape, and software products to create metro mirroring and global mirroring solutions designed to be disaster-tolerant. Enterprise-to-edge SAN management features help simplify management of large enterprise solutions. The main features are:

- ▶ Easy-to-manage tiered enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions for IBM eServer® xSeries®, iSeries™, pSeries® and zSeries®.
- ▶ Highly scalable 64–256 port switching backbone for tiered global enterprise storage area networks (SANs).
- ▶ Designed to provide high availability with concurrent hardware and firmware upgrades and call-home with McDATA® Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager, EFCM.
- ▶ Director FlexPar™, designed to provide dynamic application network provisioning, can help simplify Fibre Channel and mainframe FICON® SAN consolidation.
- ▶ Helps to provide global business continuity solutions with 10 Gbps links up to 190 km.
- ▶ EFCM and FICON Management Server (CUP) software can help simplify management of complex SAN infrastructures.
- ▶ Infrastructure simplifications solutions.
- ▶ Business continuity solutions.
- ▶ High-availability design for tiered SAN director backbone solutions.
- ▶ EFCM designed to help simplify management of a tiered enterprise SAN infrastructure.
- ▶ FICON Management Server and FICON Cascading.
- ▶ SANtegrity Binding (standard feature) is required to enable cascading between two directors for mainframe FICON protocol applications.

#### **4.4.5 Cisco MDS 9506 Multilayer Director**

The Cisco MDS 9506 Multilayer Director (2062-D04) high-availability enterprise director provides 16-128 ports, 2 Gbps fabric switching for Windows NT/2000

and UNIX, and 16–64 ports FICON switching for mainframe server clustering, infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. The base director offers Virtual SAN (VSAN), Cisco Fabric Manager, and four feature slots. Features include 4 and 8-port IPS Modules with iSCSI and FCIP capabilities, 16-port FC Switch Module, 32-port FC Switch Module with "host-optimized" ports, Caching Services Module for IBM SAN Volume Controller Software, and Mainframe Package for FICON switching.

Shown in Figure 4-16 is the MDS 9506 Multilayer Director.



Figure 4-16 9506

The main features are:

- ▶ Integrated IP and Fibre Channel SAN solutions.
- ▶ Simplified large storage network management and improved SAN fabric utilization can help reduce total cost of ownership.
- ▶ Provides throughput of up to 2 Gbps per port and up to 32 Gbps with each PortChannel ISL connection.
- ▶ VSANs create multiple, isolated SAN environments within a single physical SAN fabric connection.
- ▶ Offers scalability from 14 to 128 Fibre Channel ports.
- ▶ Offers 2 to 24 Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI or FCIP connectivity.
- ▶ Uses intelligent network services to help simplify storage area network (SAN) management and reduce total cost of ownership (TCO).
- ▶ Helps provide security for large enterprise SANs.
- ▶ Includes high-availability design with nondisruptive firmware upgrades.
- ▶ Offers compatibility with a broad range of IBM servers as well as disk and tape storage devices.



## 4.4.6 Cisco MDS 9509 Multilayer Director

The Cisco MDS 9509 Multilayer Director (2062-D07) provides from 32 to 224 ports, with 2 Gbps performance and a high-availability design. It offers 4 to 40 Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI or FCIP connectivity. It includes Virtual SAN (VSAN) capability for SAN consolidation into virtual SAN “islands” on a single physical fabric. It provides comprehensive security for large enterprise SANs deployment. The director uses intelligent networking services to help simplify mainframe FICON and Fibre Channel SAN management and reduce total cost of ownership (TCO).

Shown in Figure 4-17 is the MDS 9509 Multilayer Director.



Figure 4-17 9509

The main features are:

- ▶ Integrated IP and Fibre Channel SAN solutions.
- ▶ Simplified large storage network management and improved SAN fabric utilization can help reduce total cost of ownership.
- ▶ Provides throughput of up to 2 Gbps per port and up to 32 Gbps with each PortChannel ISL connection.
- ▶ VSANs create multiple, isolated SAN environments within a single physical SAN fabric connection.
- ▶ Offers scalability from 28 to 224 Fibre Channel ports.
- ▶ Offers 2 to 40 Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI or FCIP connectivity.
- ▶ High-availability design with support for nondisruptive firmware upgrades.



- ▶ Includes Virtual SAN (VSAN) capability for SAN consolidation into virtual SAN islands on a single physical fabric.

#### 4.4.7 IBM TotalStorage SAN n-type directors

IBM TotalStorage SAN n-type directors provide ultra-scalable CNT director technology with worldwide IBM warranty, maintenance service, and support for mid-range and enterprise infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. Infrastructure simplification solutions include storage and SAN consolidation, virtualization and automation with integrated n-type director logical domain and multi-protocol features. Business continuity solutions include data protection with shared IBM TotalStorage tape libraries and IBM Tivoli software; and disaster tolerance with remote tape libraries and data replication over metro and global distances with integrated n-type director features.

IBM TotalStorage SAN256N (2045-N16) high-availability enterprise director provides 32–256 ports; 2 Gbps fabric switching for Windows NT/2000 and UNIX; and FICON switching for mainframe server clustering, infrastructure simplification and business continuity solutions. IBM TotalStorage SAN n-type switches provide FC-AL tape attachment.

Figure 4-18 shows the N16.



Figure 4-18 N16

inVSN Enterprise Manager provides integrated management of complex IBM SAN n-type director fabrics. The main features are:

- ▶ High availability - SAN n-type directors are designed with reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) capabilities that are essential for enterprise SAN solutions. They provide redundant internal pathing, control modules, power supplies, and non-disruptive firmware upgrades that help support concurrent service and scalable upgrades that are required by on demand enterprises.
- ▶ UltraScalability - SAN n-type directors can scale from 32–256 ports, in 16-port increments, without disrupting operation.
- ▶ Investment protection - SAN n-type Enterprise Manager provides integrated management of IBM SAN256N, CNT UMD, and CNT FC/9000 Directors, which helps provide director investment protection.
- ▶ Wide range of server platforms SAN n-type directors provide mainframe FICON connectivity for IBM eServer zSeries servers and open Fibre Channel connectivity for IBM eServer z, x, i and pSeries servers and IBM TotalStorage software and disk and tape storage.
- ▶ Flexible disaster recovery solutions - SAN n-type director extended distance transceivers features and CNT Routers, when combined with IBM TotalStorage DS 8000, DS6000 and DS4000 disk storage, are designed to provide improved business continuity solution affordability, scalability, and performance.

### **Model 256**

The main features are:

- ▶ Designed to provide ultra-scalability, upgradability, and data center-level high availability
- ▶ Provides 1 and 2 Gigabit/sec (Gbps) FICON connectivity for IBM eServer zSeries and Fibre Channel connectivity for IBM eServer pSeries and IBM eServer xSeries servers
- ▶ Provides improved disaster recovery solutions with extended distance SFPs and CWDM features
- ▶ Enables connectivity to 1 and 2Gbps FICON™ and Fibre Channel-attached storage
- ▶ Features a 256-port Fibre Channel switched fabric with N+1 redundancy for all active components
- ▶ Uses IN-VSN® Enterprise Manager software to centralize control for multiple FC/9000 Fibre Channel Directors across the enterprise

Figure 4-19 on page 147 shows a picture of the 256-port CNT FC/9000 director.



Figure 4-19 CNT FC/9000-256 Fibre Channel Director

### **Model 128**

The main features are:

- ▶ Designed to provide ultra-scalability, upgradability, and data center-level high availability
- ▶ Provides 1 and 2 Gigabit/sec (Gbps) FICON connectivity for IBM eServer zSeries and Fibre Channel connectivity for IBM eServer pSeries and IBM eServer xSeries servers
- ▶ Provides improved disaster recovery solutions with extended distance SFPs and CWDM features
- ▶ Enables connectivity to 1 and 2 Gbps FICON™ and Fibre Channel-attached storage
- ▶ Features a 128-port Fibre Channel switched fabric with N+1 redundancy for all active components
- ▶ Uses IN-VSN® Enterprise Manager software to centralize control for multiple FC/9000 Fibre Channel Directors across the enterprise

Figure 4-20 on page 148 shows a picture of the 128 port director.



Figure 4-20 CNT FC/9000-128 Fibre Channel Director

### Model 64

The main features are:

- ▶ Designed to provide ultra-scalability, upgradability and data center-level high availability
- ▶ Provides 1 and 2 Gigabit/sec (Gbps) FICON connectivity for IBM eServer zSeries and Fibre Channel connectivity for IBM eServer pSeries and IBM eServer xSeries servers
- ▶ Provides improved disaster recovery solutions with extended distance SFPs and CWDM features.
- ▶ Enables connectivity to 1 and 2 Gbps FICON™ and Fibre Channel-attached storage
- ▶ Features a 64-port Fibre Channel switched fabric with N+1 redundancy for all active components
- ▶ Uses IN-VSN® Enterprise Manager software to centralize control for multiple FC/9000 Fibre Channel Directors across the enterprise

Figure 4-21 shows a picture of the 64 port director.



Figure 4-21 CNT FC/9000-64 Fibre Channel Director

### **Ultranet Replication Appliance**

The CNT Ultranet Replication Appliance (URA) consists of hardware, software, and services that provide flexible SAN data replication for any Fibre Channel storage environment over any distance. This version of the CNT Ultranet Storage Appliance is specifically tuned for IBM SAN Volume Controller support.

The URA replication server is a dedicated storage networking appliance that attaches between application servers and the IBM SAN Volume Controller. It is a dual-processor server running a special LINUX kernel. There are numerous features and solution packages available to customize the distance replication for the customer.

The URA supplies the following functions for the SAN environment:

- ▶ Asynchronous mirroring
- ▶ Snapshot replication with delta
- ▶ Heterogeneous storage support for mirroring

The main features are:

- ▶ Provides global mirroring capabilities for IBM SAN Volume Controller

- ▶ Extends IBM SAN Volume Controller tiered storage solutions across global distances
- ▶ Simplifies business continuity implementation and management with integrated hardware, software, and service solution packages
- ▶ WAN connectivity over IP, ATM, or SONET networks helps reduce implementation costs
- ▶ Utilizes existing storage and networking infrastructure to help reduce implementation costs
- ▶ Provides replication transport monitoring to help improve utilization and availability of critical WAN links

Figure 4-22 shows a picture of the CNT Ultranet Replication Appliance.

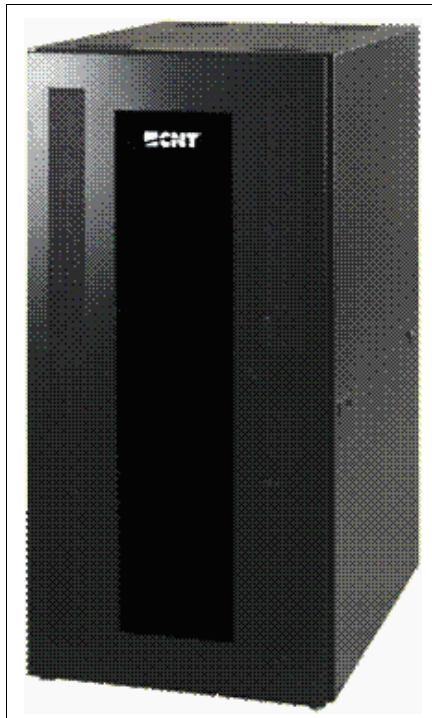


Figure 4-22 CNT Ultranet Replication Appliance

## 4.5 Multiprotocol routers

IBM currently has two multiprotocol routers in its portfolio.

## 4.5.1 IBM TotalStorage SAN 16B-R multiprotocol router

The IBM TotalStorage SAN16B-R (2109-A16) multiprotocol router provides 8 or 16 Fibre Channel and IP ports with Fibre Channel to Fibre Channel, FC-FC Routing Service for SAN island consolidation, Fibre Channel over IP, FCIP Tunneling Service for metro and global business continuity solutions, and an iSCSI Gateway Service for low-cost infrastructure simplification solutions. It provides full interoperability, and integrated management with IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type switches and directors helps protect investments. This is shown in Figure 4-23.



Figure 4-23 SAN16B-R

The IBM TotalStorage SAN16B-R multiprotocol router provides improved scalability, security, and manageability by enabling devices in separate SAN fabrics to communicate without merging fabrics into a single, large SAN fabric. This capability enables customers to initially deploy separate SAN solutions at the departmental and data center levels and then to consolidate them into large enterprise SAN solutions as their experience and requirements grow and change.

- ▶ Integrated switch and router management helps simplify deployment and operation of large enterprise SAN infrastructure simplification, business continuity, and information lifecycle management solutions.
- ▶ Designed for high performance with 1 and 2 Gbps Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet IP ports.
- ▶ Pay-as-you-grow scalability with Ports on Demand feature.
- ▶ Designed to support high availability with redundant, hot-swappable fans and power supplies and hot-pluggable optical transceivers.
- ▶ Enables SAN island consolidation for infrastructure simplification without compromising security.
- ▶ Utilizes existing IP WAN infrastructures for metro and global business continuity solutions.
- ▶ Offers iSCSI server SAN connectivity for low-cost infrastructure simplification solutions.

- ▶ Integrated router and IBM TotalStorage SAN b-type (Brocade) switch management helps simplify installation and operation and helps provide switch investment protection.

## 4.5.2 IBM TotalStorage SAN16M-R multiprotocol SAN router

IBM TotalStorage SAN16M-R multiprotocol SAN router (2027-R16) provides 12 Fibre Channel and 4 IP ports with SAN Routing for SAN island consolidation, and Internet Fibre Channel Protocol (iFCP) for high-performance metro and global business continuity solutions and Internet SCSI, iSCSI for low-cost infrastructure simplification solutions. This is shown in Figure 4-24.



Figure 4-24 SAN16M-R

The router includes zoning, two SAN routing ports, iSCSI, and SANvergence Manager. Optional features include SAN routing on 12 Fibre Channel SAN ports, iFCP with Fast Write and compression on four IP ports, and SANvergence Manager Enterprise. The main features are:

- ▶ Enables SAN island consolidation for secure data center infrastructure simplification solutions
- ▶ Offers iSCSI server SAN connectivity for low-cost infrastructure simplification solutions
- ▶ Provides SAN routing over distance for metro and global business continuity solutions
- ▶ Designed for high throughput with 1 and 2 Gbps Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) with Fast Write and compression
- ▶ Interoperability with IBM TotalStorage SAN m-type (McDATA) family provides switch investment protection
- ▶ Includes SANvergence Manager for router and network management





## SAN management

SAN management has a critical role in any SAN solution, and can also be a deciding factor in the selection of a SAN implementation. The reality of a “one pill cures all” solution is a long way off though. Typically, each vendor and each device will have its own form of software and hardware management techniques. These are usually independent of each other, and to pretend that there is one SAN management solution that will provide a single point of control is untrue. Currently, there exists a state of flux where the technical complexity and feature richness of vendors SAN technologies has introduced a prolific use of agents. In turn, this has created the very environment that a SAN was designed to overcome.

However, in an industry that is renowned for its parochialism, there are initiatives and products that may one day make a unifying management system a realistic proposition. In this chapter we look at some of the products and initiatives that are available, and that will ultimately pave the way to infrastructure simplification at the management level.

## 5.1 Standards-based management initiatives

In 1999, the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) and Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF) introduced open standards for managing storage devices. These standards use a common protocol called the Common Information Model (CIM) to enable interoperability. The Web-based version of CIM (WBEM) uses XML to define CIM objects and process transactions within sessions. This standard proposes a CIM Object Manager (CIMOM) to manage CIM objects and interactions. CIM is used to define objects and their interactions. Management applications then use the CIM object model and XML over HTTP to provide for the management of storage devices. This enables central management through the use of open standards.

IBM is committed to implementing the SNIA standards-based model to allow IBM products, and other vendor management applications, to more easily administer, monitor, and control IBM storage devices.

### 5.1.1 The Storage Management Initiative

SNIA is using its Storage Management Initiative (SMI) to create and promote adoption of a highly functional interoperable management interface for multi-vendor storage networking products. The SNIA strategic imperative is to have all storage managed by the SMI interface. The adoption of this interface will allow the focus to switch to the development of value-add functionality. IBM is one of the industry vendors promoting the drive towards this vendor-neutral approach to SAN management.

The Storage Management Interface Specification (SMI-S) for SAN-based storage management provides basic device management, support for copy services, and virtualization. As defined by the standard, the CIM services are registered in a directory to make them available to device management applications and subsystems.

SNIA uses the xmlCIM protocol to describe storage management objects and their behavior. CIM allows management applications to communicate with devices using object messaging encoded in xmlCIM.

For more information on SMI-S go to:

<http://www.snia.org>

Additionally, SNIA and the International Committee for Information Technology Standards (INCITS) announced in October 2004 that the Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S) has been approved as a new INCITS standard. The standard was approved by the INCITS executive board and has been

designated as ANSI INCITS 388-2004, *American National Standard for Information Technology Storage Management*.

ANSI INCITS 388-2004 was developed through a collaborative effort by members of SNIA representing a cross section of the industry. Today, the standard focuses on storage management of SANs and will be extended to include Network Attached Storage (NAS), Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI), and other storage networking technologies.

The ANSI INCITS 388-2004 standard can be purchased through the INCITS Web site at:

<http://www.incits.org>

### **5.1.2 Open storage management with CIM**

SAN management involves configuration, provisioning, LUN assignment, zoning, and masking, as well as monitoring and optimizing performance, capacity, and availability. In addition, support for continuous availability and disaster recovery requires that device copy services are available as a viable failover and disaster recovery environment. Traditionally, each device provides a command line interface (CLI) as well as a graphical user interface (GUI) to support these kinds of administrative tasks. Many devices also provide proprietary APIs that allow other programs to access their internal capabilities.

For complex SAN environments, management applications are now available that make it easier to perform these kinds of administrative tasks over a variety of devices.

The CIM interface and SMI-S object model adopted by SNIA provide a standard model for accessing devices, which allows management applications and devices from a variety of vendors to work with each other's products. This means that customers have more choice as to which devices will work with their chosen management application, and which management applications they can use with their devices.

IBM has embraced the concept of building open standards-based storage management solutions. Our management applications are designed to work across multiple vendors' devices, and our devices are being CIM-enabled to allow them to be controlled by other vendors' management applications.

### **5.1.3 CIM Object Manager**

The SMI-S standard designates that either a proxy or an embedded agent may be used to implement CIM. In each case, the CIM objects are supported by a

CIM Object Manager (CIMOM). External applications communicate with CIM via HTTP to exchange XML messages, which are used to configure and manage the device.

In a proxy configuration, the CIMOM runs outside of the device and can manage multiple devices. In this case, a *provider* component is installed into the CIMOM to enable the CIMOM to manage specific devices.

The providers adapt the CIMOM to work with different devices and subsystems. In this way, a single CIMOM installation can be used to access more than one device type, and more than one device of each type on a subsystem.

The CIMOM acts as a catcher for requests that are sent from storage management applications. The interactions between catcher and sender use the language and models defined by the SMI-S standard. This allows storage management applications, regardless of vendor, to query status and perform command and control using XML-based CIM interactions.

IBM has developed its storage management solutions based on the CIMOM architecture, as shown in Figure 5-1 on page 157.

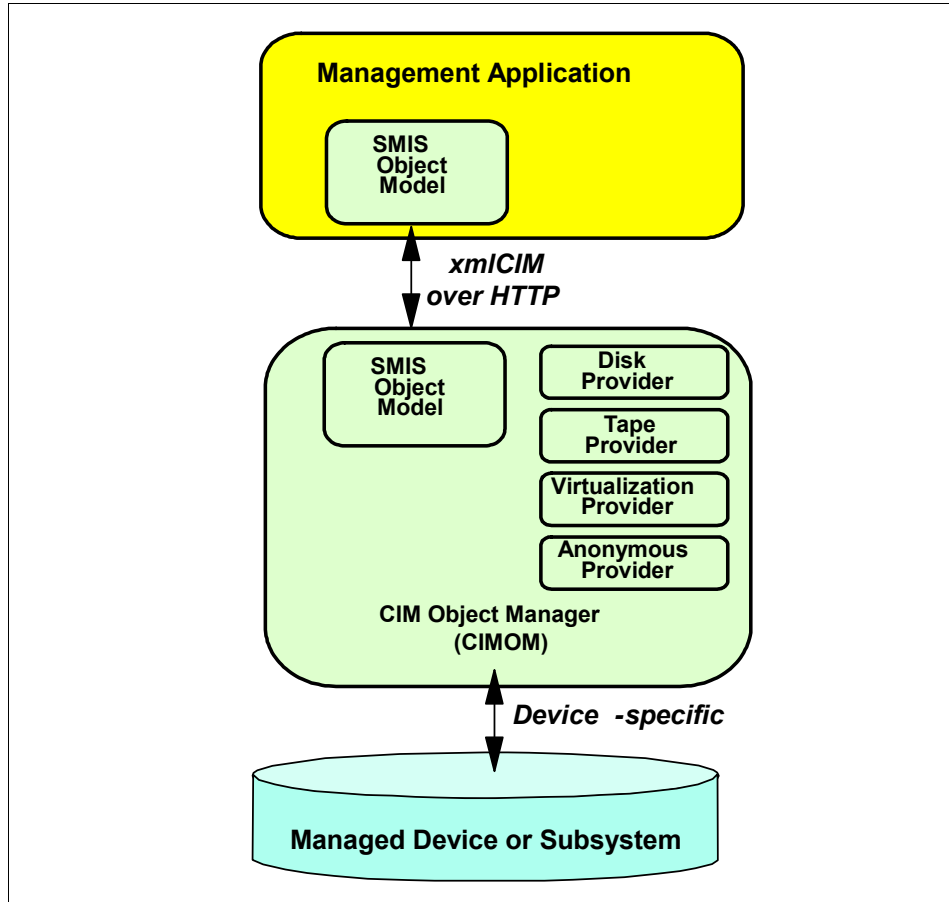


Figure 5-1 CIMOM component structure

#### 5.1.4 Simple Network Management Protocol

SNMP, which is an IP-based protocol, has a set of commands for obtaining the status and setting the operational parameters of target devices. The SNMP management platform is called the SNMP manager, and the managed devices have the SNMP agent loaded. Management data is organized in a hierarchical data structure called the Management Information Base (MIB). These MIBs are defined and sanctioned by various industry associations. The objective is for all vendors to create products in compliance with these MIBs, so that inter-vendor interoperability at all levels can be achieved. If a vendor wishes to include additional device information that is not specified in a standard MIB, then that is usually done through MIB extensions.

## 5.1.5 Application Program Interface

As we know, there are many SAN devices from many different vendors, and everyone has their own management and/or configuration software. In addition to this, most of them can also be managed via a command line interface (CLI) over a standard telnet connection, where an IP address is associated with the SAN device, or they can be managed via a RS-232 serial connection.

With different vendors and the many management and/or configuration software tools, we have a number of different products to evaluate, implement, and learn. In an ideal world there would be one product to manage and configure all the actors on the SAN stage.

Application Program Interfaces (APIs) are one way to help this become a reality. Some vendors make the API of their product available for other vendors in order to make it possible for common management in the SAN.

Fabric monitoring and management is an area where a great deal of standards work is being focused. Two management techniques are in use: in-band and out-of-band management.

## 5.1.6 In-band management

Device communications to the network management facility are most commonly done directly across the Fibre Channel transport, using SES. This is known as in-band management. It is simple to implement, requires no LAN connections, and has inherent advantages, such as the ability for a switch to initiate a SAN topology map by means of SES queries to other fabric components. However, in the event of a failure of the Fibre Channel transport itself, the management information cannot be transmitted. Therefore, access to devices is lost, as is the ability to detect, isolate, and recover from network problems. This problem can be minimized by a provision of redundant paths between devices in the fabric.

### **In-band developments**

In-band management is evolving rapidly. Proposals exist for low-level interfaces such as Return Node Identification (RNID) and Return Topology Identification (RTIN) to gather individual device and connection information, and for a management server that derives topology information. In-band management also allows attribute inquiries on storage devices and configuration changes for all elements of the SAN. Since in-band management is performed over the SAN itself, administrators are not required to make additional TCP/IP connections.

## 5.1.7 Out-of-band management

Out-of-band management means that device management data are gathered over a TCP/IP connection such as an Ethernet. Commands and queries can be sent using SNMP, Telnet (a text-only command line interface), or a Web browser Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP). Telnet and HTTP implementations are more suited to small networks.

Out-of-band management does not rely on the Fibre Channel network. Its main advantage is that management commands and messages can be sent even if a loop or fabric link fails. Integrated SAN management facilities are more easily implemented, especially by using SNMP. However, unlike in-band management, it cannot automatically provide SAN topology mapping.

- ▶ Management information base (MIB): A management information base organizes the statistics provided. The MIB runs on the SNMP management workstation, and also on the managed device. A number of industry standard MIBs have been defined for the LAN/WAN environment. Special MIBs for SANs are being built by SNIA. When these are defined and adopted, multi-vendor SANs can be managed by common commands and queries.
- ▶ Out-of-band developments: Two primary SNMP MIBs are being implemented for SAN fabric elements that allow out-of-band monitoring. The ANSI Fibre Channel Fabric Element MIB provides significant operational and configuration information on individual devices. The emerging Fibre Channel Management MIB provides additional link table and switch zoning information that can be used to derive information about the physical and logical connections between individual devices. Even with these two MIBs, out-of-band monitoring is incomplete. Most storage devices and some fabric devices do not support out-of-band monitoring. In addition, many administrators simply do not attach their SAN elements to the TCP/IP network.
- ▶ SNMP: This protocol is widely supported by LAN/WAN routers, gateways, hubs, and switches, and is the predominant protocol used for multi-vendor networks. Device status information (vendor, machine serial number, port type and status, traffic, errors, and so on) can be provided to an enterprise SNMP manager. This usually runs on a UNIX or NT workstation attached to the network. A device can generate an alert by SNMP, in the event of an error condition. The device symbol, or icon, displayed on the SNMP manager console, can be made to turn red or yellow, and messages can be sent to the network operator.

### In-band advantages

In-band management has these main advantages:

- ▶ Device installation, configuration, and monitoring

- ▶ Inventory of resources on the SAN
- ▶ Automated component and fabric topology discovery
- ▶ Management of the fabric configuration, including zoning configurations
- ▶ Health and performance monitoring

### **Out-of-band advantages**

Out-of-band management using the Ethernet has three main advantages:

- ▶ It keeps management traffic out of the FC path, so it does not affect the business-critical data flow on the storage network.
- ▶ It makes management possible, even if a device is down.
- ▶ It is accessible from anywhere in the routed network.

In a SAN, we will typically encounter both of these methods.

### **SCSI Enclosure Services**

In SCSI legacy systems, a SCSI protocol runs over a limited length parallel cable, with up to 15 devices in a chain. The latest version of SCSI-3 serial protocol offers this same disk read/write command set in a serial format, which allows for the use of Fibre Channel, as a more flexible replacement of parallel SCSI. The ANSI SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) proposal defines basic device status from storage enclosures. For example, DIAGNOSTICS and RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS commands can be used to retrieve power supply status, temperature, fan speed, and other parameters from the SCSI devices.

SES has a minimal impact on Fibre Channel data transfer throughput. Most SAN vendors deploy SAN management strategies using Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) based, and non-SNMP based (SES), protocols.

## **5.1.8 Service Location Protocol**

The Service Location Protocol (SLP) provides a flexible and scalable framework for providing hosts with access to information about the existence, location, and configuration of networked services. Traditionally, users have had to find devices by knowing the name of a network host that is an alias for a network address. SLP eliminates the need for a user to know the name of a network host supporting a service. Rather, the user supplies the desired type of service and a set of attributes that describe the service. Based on that description, the Service Location Protocol resolves the network address of the service for the user.

SLP provides a dynamic configuration mechanism for applications in local area networks. Applications are modeled as clients that need to find servers attached to any of the available networks within an enterprise. For cases where there are many different clients and/or services available, the protocol is adapted to make



use of nearby Directory Agents that offer a centralized repository for advertised services.

The IETF's Service Location (srvloc) Working Group is developing SLP. SLP is defined in RFC 2165 (Service Location Protocol, June 1997) and updated in RFC 2608 (Service Location Protocol, Version 2, June 1999). More information can be found in this text document:

<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2608.txt>

### 5.1.9 Tivoli Common Agent Services

The Tivoli Common Agent Services are a new component designed to provide a way to deploy agent code across multiple end-user machines or application servers throughout an enterprise. The agents collect data from and perform operations on managed resources for Fabric Manager.

The Tivoli Common Agent Services agent manager provides authentication and authorization and maintains a registry of configuration information about the agents and resource managers in your environment. The resource managers (Fabric Manager, for example) are the server components of products that manage agents deployed on the common agent. Management applications use the services of the agent manager to communicate securely with and to obtain information about the computer systems running the Tivoli common agent software, referred to in this document as the agent.

Tivoli Common Agent Services also provide common agents to act as containers to host product agents and common services. The common agent provides remote deployment capability, shared machine resources, and secure connectivity.

Tivoli Common Agent Services is comprised of two subcomponents:

- ▶ Agent manager

The agent manager handles the registration of managers and agents, and security (such as the issuing of certificates and keys and the performing of authentication). It also provides query APIs for use by other products. One agent manager instance can manage multiple resource managers and agents. The agent manager can be on the same machine as Fabric Manager or on a separate machine.

- ▶ Common agent

The common agent resides on the agent machines of other Tivoli products. One common agent can manage multiple product agents on the same machine. It provides monitoring capabilities and can be used to install and update product agents.

## 5.2 SAN management features

SAN management requirements are typified by having a common purpose, but are implemented in different fashions by the differing vendors. Some prefer to use Web browser interfaces, some prefer to use embedded agents, and some prefer to use the CLI. There is no right or wrong way. Usually the selection of SAN components is based on a combination of what the hardware and software will provide, not on the ease of use of the management solution. The high-level features of any SAN management solution are likely to include most of the following:

- ▶ Cost effectiveness
- ▶ Open approach
- ▶ Device management
- ▶ Fabric Management
- ▶ Pro-active monitoring
- ▶ Fault isolation and trouble-shooting
- ▶ Centralized management
- ▶ Remote management
- ▶ Adherence to standards
- ▶ Resource management
- ▶ Secure access

## 5.3 SAN management levels

The SAN management architecture can be divided into three distinct levels at which to manage. These are the:

- ▶ SAN storage level
- ▶ SAN network level
- ▶ Enterprise systems level

In Figure 5-2 on page 163 we illustrate the three management levels in a SAN solution.

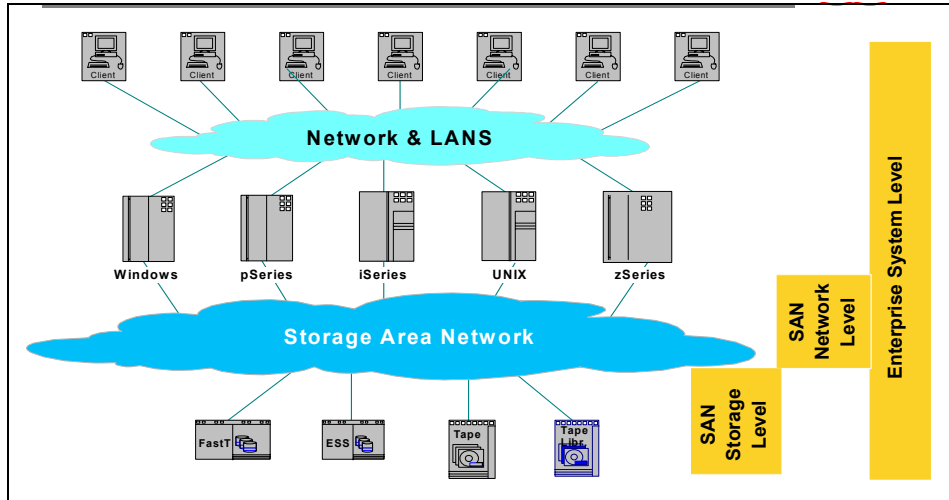


Figure 5-2 SAN management levels

### 5.3.1 SAN storage level

The SAN storage level is composed of various storage devices such as disks, disk arrays, tapes, and tape libraries. As the configuration of a storage resource must be integrated with the configuration of the server's logical view of them, the SAN storage level management spans both storage resources and servers, as shown in Figure 5-2.

The ANSI SCSI-3 serial protocol previously used in SCSI connections is now used over FCP by many SAN vendors in order to offer higher speeds, longer distances, and greater device population for SANs, with few changes in the upper level protocols. The ANSI SCSI-3 serial protocol has also defined a new set of commands called SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) for basic device status from storage enclosures.

In the sections that follow, we describe some of the SAN storage device management and reporting tools.

#### IBM TotalStorage DS Storage Manager

This is an intuitive Web-based GUI designed to provide a straightforward means of performing logical configuration, service, copy service management and for firmware upgrades. The DS Storage Manager incorporates the technology innovations of the IBM Interactive Configuration Agent Tool (ICAT), which supplies intuitive graphical user Web-based interfaces. Express Configuration Wizards of the DS Storage Manager help you configure and manage storage functions quickly and easily. The DS6000 series enables businesses to leverage

existing Enterprise Storage Server (ESS) IT administration skills through the DS Storage Manager.

### **IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Specialist**

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Specialist allows administrators to configure, monitor, and centrally manage the IBM Enterprise Storage Server remotely through a Web interface. With a browser interface, storage administrators can access the ESS Specialist from work, from home, or on the road through a secure network connection.

### **IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Expert**

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Expert:

- ▶ Helps optimize the performance of IBM tape and disk subsystems when used in conjunction with the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape Library Expert
- ▶ Hosts disk mapping via a LUN, providing complete information on logical volumes including physical disks and adapters
- ▶ Customizes and enables threshold events relating to ESS performance and utilization
- ▶ Uses SNMP alerts for ESS exception events that exceed threshold values
- ▶ Provides statistics to help manage the performance of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server
- ▶ Tracks total capacity, used capacity, and free capacity for all connected ESS disk storage in the enterprise
- ▶ Provides information about systems, such as z/OS and UNIX, that share volumes within the ESS.
- ▶ Helps centralize management of multiple remote systems located throughout the enterprise

### **IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape 3494 Library Specialist**

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape 3494 Library Specialist allows administrators to monitor and centrally manage the IBM Enterprise Storage Server remotely through a Web interface including the TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server in a P2P configuration.

### **IBM TotalStorage LTO Tape Library Specialist**

The IBM TotalStorage LTO Tape Library Specialist allows administrators to monitor and centrally manage all of the libraries in the LTO Tape Library Family remotely through a Web interface.

## **IBM TotalStorage ETL Expert**

The IBM TotalStorage ETL Expert:

- ▶ Provides a real-time status on key measurements concerning the Tape Library and Virtual Tape Server.
- ▶ Easy-to-access performance metrics that include information on managing Tape Volume Cache, logical volume fragmenting, and throttling.
- ▶ Monitor and track the performance of Enterprise Storage Servers.
- ▶ LUN-to-host disk mapping providing complete information on the logical volumes including the physical disks and adapters.
- ▶ Customization and enablement capability for threshold events relating to ESS performance and utilization.
- ▶ SNMP alerts for ESS Expert exception events that exceed threshold values.
- ▶ Utilizes a Web-based architecture that enables administrators to monitor IBM tape and disk subsystems located anywhere in the world.

## **FAStT Storage Manager**

The FAStT Storage Manager provides:

- ▶ Intuitive centralized administration/management tool
- ▶ Manages multiple FAStTs from a single console
- ▶ Manages and configures FlashCopy and mirroring
- ▶ Dynamic volume expansion and configuration
- ▶ Error reporting and diagnostic tool for subsystem components
- ▶ Performance monitoring
- ▶ Storage partitioning

## **IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center**

The IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center:

- ▶ Allows you to manage the capacity utilization and availability of storage systems, file systems, and databases
- ▶ Allows you to monitor, manage, and control (zone) SAN fabric components
- ▶ Allows you to automate capacity provisioning of file systems
- ▶ Allows you to monitor and track the performance of SAN-attached SMI-S compliant storage devices
- ▶ Allows you to manage advanced replication services

### 5.3.2 SAN network level

The SAN network level is composed of all the various components that provide connectivity, like the SAN cables, SAN switches, inter-switch links, SAN gateways, SAN routers, and HBAs.

This SAN network level becomes closely tied to inter-networking infrastructures such as those seen in local area network (LAN) and wide area network (WAN) solutions. The networking components used in LAN/WAN solutions use the SNMP support feature to provide management of all these networking components. Most SAN solution vendors also mandate SNMP support for all of their SAN networking components, which is then used and exploited by SNMP-based network management applications to report on the various disciplines of SAN management.

### 5.3.3 Enterprise systems level

The enterprise systems level essentially ensures the ability to have a single management view and console.

Enterprise systems management applications have to integrate the management data, and then present it in an easy-to-understand format. This management data comes from various layers of the enterprise infrastructure, including storage, networks, servers, and desktops, often with each of them running its own management application.

In addition, the rapid deployment of Internet-based solutions in the enterprise has necessitated Web-based management tools. Various industry-wide initiatives, like Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM), Common Information Model (CIM), Desktop Management Interface (DMI), and Java™ Management Application Programming Interface (JMAPI) are being defined and deployed today in order to create some level of management standardization, and many SAN solutions vendors are deploying these standards in their products.

In heterogeneous management solutions, CIM enables data integration of management applications.

## 5.4 SAN management applications

Each vendor in the IBM TotalStorage SAN portfolio brings their own bespoke applications to manage and monitor the SAN. In the topics that follow we give a high-level overview of each of them.

## 5.4.1 IBM TotalStorage b-type family

The b-type family switch management framework is designed to support the widest range of solutions, from the very small workgroup SANs up to very large enterprise SANs. The switch management options include browser-based WEBTOOLS, Fabric Manager, and open standards-based interfaces to enterprise SAN managers.

The following management interfaces allow you to monitor fabric topology, port status, physical status, and other information to aid in system debugging and performance analysis:

- ▶ Command-line interface (CLI) through a Telnet connection
- ▶ Advanced Web Tools
- ▶ SCSI Enclosure Services (SES)
- ▶ SNMP applications
- ▶ Management server

You can use all these management methods either in-band (Fibre Channel) or out-of-band (Ethernet), except for SES, which can be used for in-band only.

## 5.4.2 Cisco

Fabric Manager and Device Manager are the centralized tools used to manage the Cisco SAN fabric and the devices connected to it. Fabric Manager can be used to manage fabric-wide settings such as zoning and also manage settings at an individual switch level.

Fabric Manager provides high-level summary information about all switches in a fabric, automatically launching the Web Tools interface when more detailed information is required. In addition, Fabric Manager provides improved performance over Web Tools alone.

Some of the capabilities of fabric manager are:

- ▶ Configures and manages the fabric on multiple efficient levels
- ▶ Intelligently groups multiple SAN objects and SAN management functions to provide ease and time efficiency in administering tasks
- ▶ Identifies, isolates, and manages SAN events across multiple switches and fabrics
- ▶ Provides drill-down capability to individual SAN components through tightly coupled Web Tools and Fabric Watch integration
- ▶ Discovers all SAN components and views the real-time state of all fabrics

- ▶ Provides multi-fabric administration of secure Fabric OS SANs through a single encrypted console
- ▶ Monitors ISLs
- ▶ Manages switch licenses
- ▶ Performs fabric stamping

### 5.4.3 IBM TotalStorage n-type family

CNT's inVSN storage network management software provides an integrated, end-to-end view of the storage application across the entire SAN/MAN/WAN networks. inVSN proactively collects and analyzes network data, identifying potential problems before they cause outages. inVSN also provides actionable information to the management framework.

CNT provides APIs that enable third-party software vendors to integrate their storage management solutions with inVSN. The inVSN Open Edition software suite includes the inVSN Network Manager, inVSN Performance Manager, and inVSN Configuration Manager

The inVSN Storage Network Manager Enterprise Edition supports mainframe and mixed environments, including support for ESCON, FICON, and FCIP, ATM, SONET, and dark fibre.

### 5.4.4 IBM TotalStorage e-type family

The Emulex InSpeed-based family of SAN storage switches combine extremely high performance levels with the simplicity needed for entry-level SANs. There are different levels of management possible with InSpeed SAN storage switches.

The lowest level of management includes an RS-232C or similar standard interface. Included is some active monitoring of ports and the ability to generate an interrupt via the external communications ports in order to allow logging of events.

The next level of management has complete monitoring and control capabilities and can generate events. In addition, advanced policy management features such as Port-Test-Before-Insert, health monitoring, and zone recovery are available.

The highest form of management includes all the previous management capabilities, along with SNMP, XML, and a Web server interface.



### **5.4.5 IBM TotalStorage m-type family**

McDATA's Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager (EFCM) application provides a common java-based GUI to configure and manage McDATA storage area networks. It is intended to give a fabric-wide view of the SAN from a single console, and can discover non-McDATA switches, provided the principal switch in a fabric is a McDATA switch. The application is accessed on the EFC server through a network connection from a remote user workstation. The application operates independently from the director, switch, or other product managed by the EFC Server.

One of the major factors for enterprise business to use the EFC server to manage their SAN is the capability to back up and restore device and fabric configuration for all the products managed by the local or remote EFC server. It enables the enterprise SAN to become disaster proof.

## **5.5 SAN multithreading software**

In a well-designed SAN, it is likely that you will want a device to be accessed by the host application over more than one path, in order to obtain potentially better performance, and to aid recovery in case of adapter, cable, switch, or GBIC failure.

In Figure 5-3 on page 170 we show a typical configuration in a core-edge SAN environment from a high-level view.

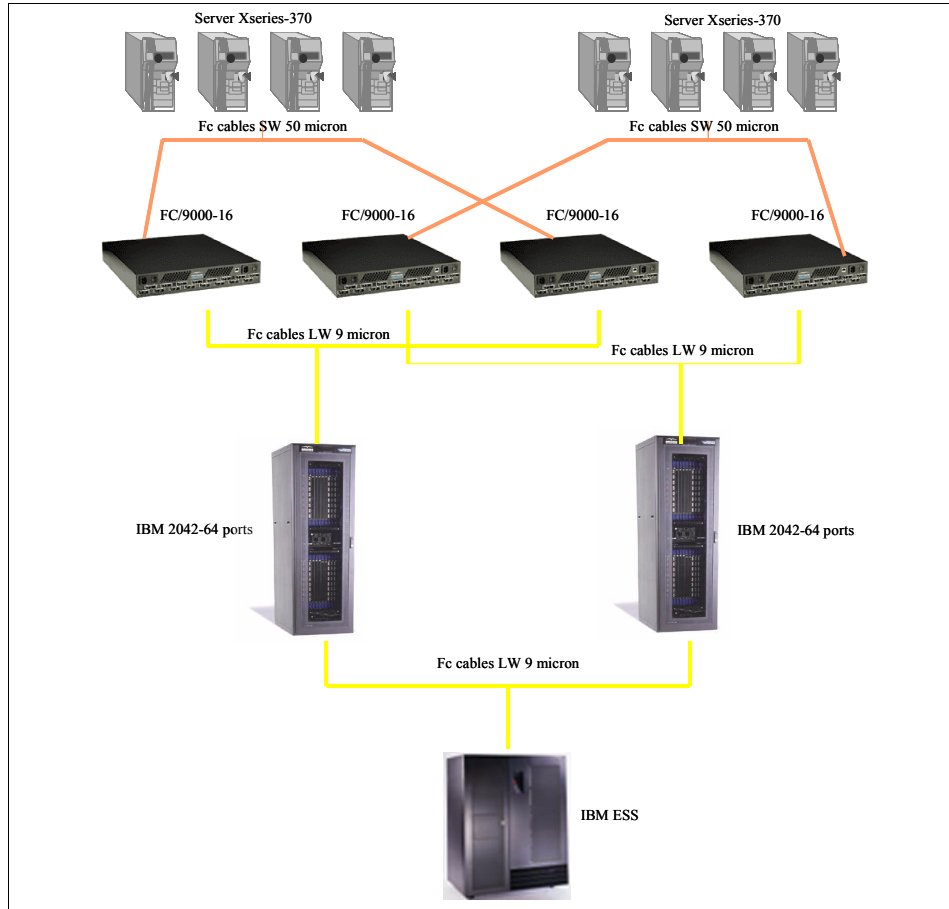


Figure 5-3 Core-edge SAN environment

In Figure 5-4 on page 171 we show this in more detail.

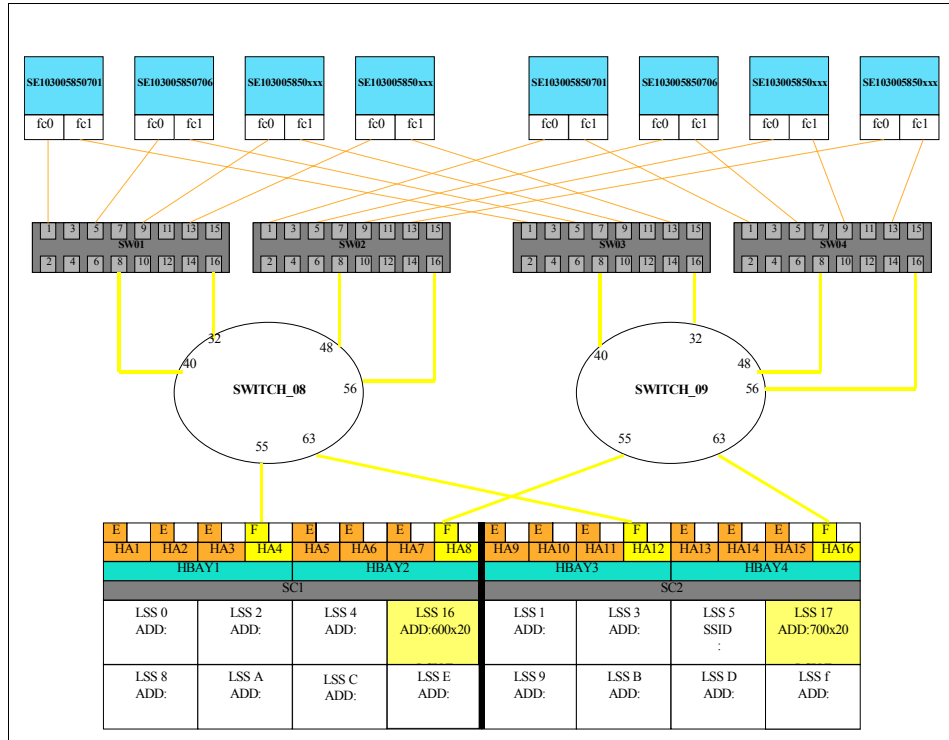


Figure 5-4 Core-edge SAN environment details

In this case, the same LUN may be presented many times to the host through each of the possible paths to the LUN. In order to avoid this and make the device easier to administrate and eliminate confusion, multipathing software will be needed. This will be responsible for making each LUN visible only once from the application and operating system point of view (similar to the concepts introduced in the XA architecture in the MVS™ operating system). In addition to this, the multipathing software is also responsible for fail-over recovery, and load balancing:

- ▶ Fail-over recovery: In a case of the malfunction of a component involved in making the LUN connection, the multipathing software must redirect all the data traffic onto other available paths.
- ▶ Load balancing: The multipathing software must be able to balance the data traffic equitably over the available paths from the hosts to the LUNs.

There are different kinds of multipathing software coming from different vendors.

### **IBM Data Path Optimizer**

The IBM Data Path Optimizer (DPO) provides the ability to dynamically switch paths, if multiple paths are assigned, in Windows and UNIX environments, providing high availability, and also providing a load balancing algorithm that can potentially enhance performance and throughput. It was used in SCSI environments and has been superseded by the IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) for all ESS models.

### **IBM Subsystem Device Driver**

The IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) is a pseudo device driver designed to support the multipath configuration environments in the IBM ESS. It resides in a host system with the native disk device driver, and provides the following functions:

- ▶ Enhanced data availability
- ▶ Dynamic I/O load-balancing across multiple paths
- ▶ Automatic path failover protection
- ▶ Concurrent download of licensed internal code
- ▶ Path-selection policies for the host system

### **IBM Redundant Disk Array Controller**

The IBM Redundant Disk Array Controller (RDAC) is a Fibre Channel driver that implements path failover and load balancing on many platforms, and it is used in conjunction with the IBM TotalStorage DS and FAStT Server Family.

### **IBM Multi-Path Proxy driver**

The classic RDAC was known to be a class driver. The new RDAC driver, sometimes referred to as the Multi-Path Proxy (MPP) driver, is a new multipath driver architecture that is used in the new versions of multipathing drivers for Windows 2000/2003 and Linux.

## **5.6 SAN fault isolation and troubleshooting**

As SANs become more and more complex, troubleshooting can become an issue in a large fabric. Or even a small one.

### **5.6.1 Problem determination and problem source identification**

Problem determination and problem source identification (PD/PSI) is an issue that needs to be considered when, or even before, a SAN is implemented.

There are many tools to collect the necessary data in order to perform a PD/PSI. Often these tools, especially at the SAN network level, are as manyfold as there are devices and vendors.

At a minimum, a SAN troubleshooter should know how to:

- ▶ Interrogate the fabric.
- ▶ Find devices or LUNs that have gone missing.
- ▶ Identify failing cables.
- ▶ Interpret message and error logs.
- ▶ Know where to start troubleshooting from.
- ▶ Know how to record information in an orderly fashion.
- ▶ Create a diagram of the SAN.
- ▶ Access the name server.
- ▶ Access port and GBIC information.
- ▶ Understand switch LEDs.
- ▶ Use vendor-specific diagnostic tools.
- ▶ Find error messages on the host or storage devices.
- ▶ Check for zoning conflicts.
- ▶ Use FC ping and traceroute.

Advanced troubleshooters may require access to a Fibre Channel analyzer.

Most troubleshooters would like to have only one tool that is capable of collecting all the necessary information. This would be done automatically in a fast and simple way, and then formatted into an easy-to-understand mode for analysis. However, until such a tool exists, it is much more of a manual process.

The management tools discussed previously will help, but they may not be as comprehensive as some users would like. It is likely that in the future the SAN components will be as “easy” to debug as it is on the mainframe today—by that we mean that performance and error datum is typically automatically stored for later analysis, or simple traps can be set to prompt for action.

Some of the best advice has already been stated, and that is to remember that a good SAN begins with a good design and is well documented. This is undoubtedly of considerable help when any form of error occurs, and will shorten the time to problem resolution.

In terms of PD/PSI, what we mean by a good design is that configuration design information is understandable, available at any support level, and is always updated with the latest configuration. There is also a database kept with respect to information about connections, naming conventions, device serial numbers, WWN, zoning, system applications, and so on. These should be assigned a responsible owner who should keep records and be kept up to date on a regular basis.





## SAN security

When designing or managing a SAN, physical and logical security is one of the most important issues. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link. There is no point in locking all the doors and then leaving a window open. The best defense is a security architecture that protects information at many levels or layers, and that has no single point of failure.

The levels of defense need to be complementary and in conjunction with each other. If you have a SAN, or any other security framework for that matter, that crumbles after a single penetration, then this is not a recipe for success.

An example of a more secure network that has adopted different levels of security would be one where on a node, for example, access control lists (ACLs) work in tandem with the IP address or subnet to check for authorization and authentication. No access could be gained unless the request was sent from a particular, trusted IP address.

### **Access control security**

As true as it is in any IT environment, it is also true in a SAN environment that access to information, and to the configuration or management tools, must be restricted to only those people that are competent and authorized to make changes. Any configuration or management software is typically protected with several levels of security, usually starting with a user ID and password that must be assigned appropriately to personnel based on their skill level and responsibility.

## **Data security**

This is a security and integrity requirement aiming to guarantee that data from one application or system does not become overlaid, corrupted, or otherwise destroyed, whether intentionally or by accident, by other applications or systems. This may involve some form of authorization, and/or the ability to fence off one system's data from another systems.

This has to be balanced with the requirement for the expansion of SANs to enterprise-wide environments, with a particular emphasis on multi-platform connectivity. The last thing that we want to do with security is to create SAN islands, as that would destroy the essence of the SAN. True cross-platform data sharing solutions, as opposed to data partitioning solutions, are also a requirement. Security and access control also need to be improved to guarantee data integrity.



## 6.1 Fibre Channel security

Since April 2002, the ANSI T11 group has been working on FC-SP, a proposal for the development of a set of methods that allow security techniques to be implemented in a SAN.

Up until now, fabric access of Fibre Channel components was attended to by identification (who are you?). This information could be used later to decide if this device was allowed to attach to storage (by zoning), or if it was just for the propagation of information (for example, attaching a switch to a switch), but it was not a criteria to refuse an inter-switch connection.

As the fabric complexity increases, more stringent controls are required for guarding against malicious attacks and accidental configuration changes. Additionally, increasingly more in-fabric functionality is being proposed and implemented that requires a closer focus on security.

The customer demand for protecting the access to data within a fabric necessitates the standardization of interoperable security protocols. The security required within a Fibre Channel fabric to cope with attempted breaches of security can be grouped into four areas:

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Authorization</b>        | I tell you what you're allowed to do!   |
| <b>Authentication</b>       | Tell me about yourself; I will decide if you may log in. A digital verification of who you are, it ensures that received data is from a known and trusted source. |
| <b>Data confidentiality</b> | Cryptographic protocols ensure that your data was unable to be read or otherwise utilized by any party while in transit.  |
| <b>Data integrity</b>       | Verification that the data you sent has not been altered or tampered with in any way.   |

## 6.2 Security mechanisms

In the topics that follow, we overview some of the common approaches to securing data that are encountered in the SAN environment. The list is not meant to be an in-depth discussion, but merely an attempt to acquaint the reader with the technology and terminology likely to be encountered when a discussion on SAN security takes place.

## 6.2.1 Encryption

In 1976, W. Diffie and M. Hellman (their initials are found in DH-CHAP) introduced a new method of encryption and key management.

**Note:** Encryption is the translation of data into a secret code, and is the most effective way to achieve data security. To read an encrypted file you must have access to a secret key, or password, that enables you to decrypt it. Unencrypted data is called plain text; encrypted data is referred to as cipher text.

There are two main types of encryption: Asymmetric encryption (also called public-key encryption) and symmetric encryption.

- ▶ Symmetric: Where the same key is used to encrypt and decrypt the message
- ▶ Asymmetric: Where one key is used to encrypt a message, and another to decrypt the message

A public-key cryptosystem is a cryptographic system that uses a pair of unique keys (a public key and a private key). Each individual is assigned a pair of these keys to encrypt and decrypt information. A message encrypted by one of these keys can only be decrypted by the other key in the pair:

- ▶ The public key is available to others for use when encrypting information that will be sent to an individual. For example, people can use a person's public key to encrypt information they want to send to that person. Similarly, people can use the user's public key to decrypt information sent by that person.
- ▶ The private key is accessible only to the individual. The individual can use the private key to decrypt any messages encrypted with the public key. Similarly, the individual can use the private key to encrypt messages, so that the messages can only be decrypted with the corresponding public key.

This means that exchanging keys is no longer a security concern. *A* has a public key and a private key. *A* can send the public key to anyone else. With that public key, *B* can encrypt data to be sent to *A*. Since the data was encrypted with *A*'s public key, *only A* can decrypt that data with his private key. If *A* wants to encrypt data to be sent to *B*, *A* needs *B*'s public key.

If *A* wants to testify that it was the person that actually sent a document, *A* will encrypt and protect the document with his private key, while others can decrypt it using *A*'s public key; they will know that in this case *only A* could have encrypted this document. Each individual involved needs their own public/private key combination.

The remaining question is, When you initially receive someone's public key for the first time, how do you know it is them? If “spoofing” someone's identity is so easy, how do you knowingly exchange public keys and how do you trust that the user is who they say they are? The answer is to use a digital certificate. A digital certificate is a digital document that vouches for the identity and key ownership of an individual—it guarantees authentication and integrity.

The ability to perform switch-to-switch authentication in FC-SP enables a new concept in Fibre Channel: The secure fabric. Only switches that are *authorized* and properly *authenticated* are allowed to join the fabric.

Whereas, authentication in the secure fabric is twofold: The fabric wants to verify the identity of each new switch before joining the fabric, and the switch that is wanting to join the fabric wants to verify that it is connected to the right fabric. Each switch needs a list of the WWNs of the switches authorized to join the fabric, and a set of parameters that will be used to verify the identity of the other switches belonging to the fabric.

Manual configuration of such information within all the switches of the fabric is certainly possible, but not advisable in larger fabrics. And there is the need of a mechanism to manage and distribute information about authorization and authentication across the fabric.

Other encryption terminology that is commonly encountered in the SAN is:

► DES

Data Encryption Standard (DES) is a widely used method of data encryption using a private (secret) key that was judged so difficult to break by the U.S. government that it was restricted for exportation to other countries. There are 72,000,000,000,000,000 (72 quadrillion) or more possible encryption keys that can be used. For each given message, the key is chosen at random from among this enormous number of keys. Like other private key cryptographic methods, both the sender and the receiver must know and use the same private key.

DES originated at IBM in 1977 and was adopted by the U.S. Department of Defense. It is specified in the ANSI X3.92 and X3.106 standards and in the Federal FIPS 46 and 81 standards. The next standard will be known as the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).

► 3DES

Triple DES or 3DES is based on the DES algorithm developed by an IBM team in 1974 and was adopted as a national standard in 1977. 3DES uses three 64-bit long keys (overall key length is 192 bits, although actual key length is 56 bits). Data is encrypted with the first key, decrypted with the second key, and finally encrypted again with the third key. This makes 3DES

three times slower than standard DES but offers much greater security. This is pronounced "triple DES." Application of the DES standard where three keys are used in succession to provide additional security. An encrypting algorithm that processes each data block three times, using a unique key each time. 3DES is much more difficult to break than straight DES. It is the most secure of the DES combinations, and therefore slower in performance.

▶ AES

Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is a symmetric 128-bit block data encryption technique developed by Belgian cryptographers Joan Daemen and Vincent Rijmen. The U.S. government adopted the algorithm as its encryption technique in October 2000, replacing the DES encryption it used. AES works at multiple network layers simultaneously. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) of the U.S. Department of Commerce selected the algorithm, called Rijndael (pronounced Rhine Dahl or Rain Doll), out of a group of five algorithms under consideration.

▶ SFTP

Secure version of the FTP protocol, also written as S/FTP. SFTP uses SSL to encrypt the entire user session, thereby protecting the contents of files and the user's login name and password from network sniffers. Through normal FTP, usernames, passwords, and file contents are all transferred in clear text.

▶ SHA

The Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) family is a set of related cryptographic hash functions. The most commonly used function in the family, SHA-1, is employed in a large variety of popular security applications and protocols, including TLS, SSL, PGP, SSH, S/MIME, and IPsec. SHA algorithms were designed by the National Security Agency (NSA) and published as a U.S. government standard.

▶ SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a protocol developed by Netscape for transmitting private documents over the Internet. SSL works by using a private key to encrypt data that is transferred over the SSL connection. Both Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer support SSL, and many Web sites use the protocol to obtain confidential user information. URLs that require an SSL connection start with https: instead of http.

▶ SSH

Secure Shell (SSH) was developed by SSH Communications Security Ltd., and is a program to log into another computer over a network, to execute commands in a remote machine, and to move files from one machine to another. It provides strong authentication and secure communications over insecure channels. It is a replacement for rlogin, rsh, rcp, and rdist.

SSH protects a network from attacks such as IP spoofing, IP source routing, and DNS spoofing. An attacker who has managed to take over a network can only force ssh to disconnect. He or she cannot play back the traffic or hijack the connection when encryption is enabled.

When using ssh's slogin (instead of rlogin), the entire login session, including transmission of password, is encrypted; therefore it is almost impossible for an outsider to collect passwords.

## 6.2.2 Authorization database

The fabric authorization database is a list of the WWNs and associated information like domain IDs of the switches that are authorized to join the fabric.

## 6.2.3 Authentication database

The fabric authentication database is a list of the set of parameters that allows the authentication of a switch within a fabric. An entry of the authentication database holds at least the switch WWN, authentication mechanism Identifier, and a list of appropriate authentication parameters.

## 6.2.4 Authentication mechanisms

In order to provide the equivalent security functions that are implemented in the LAN, the ANSI T11-group is considering a range of proposals for connection authentication and integrity, which can be recognized as the FC adoption of the IP security standards. These standards propose to secure FC traffic between all FC ports and the domain controller. These are some of the methods that will be used:

- ▶ FCPAP refers to Secure Remote Password Protocol (SRP), RFC 2945.
- ▶ DH-CHAP refers to Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), RFC 1994.
- ▶ FCSec refers to IP Security (IPsec), RFC 2406.

The FCSec aim is to provide authentication of these entities:

- Node-to-node
- Node-to-switch
- Switch-to-switch

An additional function that may be possible is to implement frame level encryption.

## 6.2.5 Accountability

Although not a method for protecting data, it is a method by which an administrator is able to track any form of change within the network.

## 6.2.6 Zoning

Zoning allows for finer segmentation of the switched fabric. Zoning can be used to instigate a barrier between different environments. Only members of the same zone can communicate within that zone, and all other attempts from outside are rejected. Zoning could also be used for test and maintenance purposes. For example, not many enterprises will mix their test and maintenance environments with their production environment. Within a fabric, you can easily separate your test environment from your production bandwidth allocation on the same fabric using zoning.

## 6.2.7 Isolating the fabric

In 2004 the T11 committee of the International Committee for Information Technology Standards selected Cisco's Virtual SAN (VSAN) technology for approval by the American National Standard Institute (ANSI) as the industry standard for implementing virtual fabrics. In simple terms, this gives the ability to segment a single physical SAN fabric into many logical, independent SANs.

VSANs offer the capability to overlay multiple hardware-enforced virtual fabric environments within a single physical fabric infrastructure. Each VSAN contains separate (dedicated) fabric services designed for enhanced scalability, resilience, and independence among storage resource domains. This is especially useful in segregating service operations and failover events between high-availability resource domains allocated to different VSANs. Each VSAN contains its own complement of hardware-enforced zones, dedicated fabric services, and management capabilities, just as if the VSAN were configured as a separate physical fabric. Therefore, VSANs are designed to allow more efficient SAN utilization and flexibility, because SAN resources may be allocated and shared among more users, while supporting secure segregation of traffic and retaining independent control of resource domains on a VSAN-by-VSAN basis. Within each VSAN it has its own separate zoning configurations.

## 6.2.8 LUN masking

One approach to securing storage devices from hosts wishing to take over already assigned resources is logical unit number (LUN) masking. Every storage device offers its resources to the hosts by means of LUNs. For example, each partition in the storage server has its own LUN. If the host (server) wants to

access the storage, it needs to request access to the LUN in the storage device. The purpose of LUN masking is to control access to the LUNs. The storage device itself accepts or rejects access requests from different hosts. The user defines which hosts can access which LUN by means of the storage device control program. Whenever the host accesses a particular LUN, the storage device will check its access list for that LUN, and it will allow or disallow access to the LUN.

## **6.2.9 Fibre Channel Authentication Protocol**

The Switch Link Authentication Protocol (SLAP/FC-SW-3) establishes a region of trust between switches. For an end-to-end solution to be effective, this region of trust must extend throughout the SAN, which requires the participation of fabric-connected devices, such as HBAs. The joint initiative between Brocade and Emulex establishes Fibre Channel Authentication Protocol (FCAP) as the next-generation implementation of SLAP. Customers gain the assurance that a region of trust extends over the entire domain. FCAP has been incorporated into its fabric switch architecture and has proposed the specification as a standard to ANSI T11 (as part of FC-SP). FCAP is a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)-based cryptographic authentication mechanism for establishing a common region of trust among the various entities (such as switches and HBAs) in a SAN. A central, trusted third party serves as a guarantor to establish this trust. With FCAP, certificate exchange takes place among the switches and edge devices in the fabric to create a region of trust consisting of switches and HBAs.

## **6.2.10 Persistent binding**

Server-level access control is called persistent binding. Persistent binding uses configuration information stored on the server, and is implemented through the server's HBA driver. The process binds a server device name to a specific Fibre Channel storage volume or logical unit number (LUN), through a specific HBA and storage port WWN. Or, put in more technical terms, it is a host-centric way to direct an operating system to assign certain SCSI target IDs and LUNs.

## **6.2.11 Port binding**

To provide a higher level of security, you can also use port binding to bind a particular device (as represented by a WWN) to a given port that will not allow any other device to plug into the port, and subsequently assume the role of the device that was there. The reason for this is that the "rogue" device that was inserted will have a different WWN than the port was bound to.

## 6.2.12 Port type controls

This is where one type of port is locked, according to its specifications, to another port.

## 6.3 IP security

There are standards and products available originally developed for the LAN and already installed worldwide. These can easily be added into and used by SAN solutions.

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) had been extended for security functions to SNMPv3. The SNMPv3 specifications were approved by the Internet Engineering Steering Group (IESG) as full Internet Standard in March 2002.

IPSec uses cryptographic techniques obtaining management data that can flow through an encrypted tunnel. Encryption makes sure that only the intended recipient can make use of it (RFC 2401).

Other cryptographic protocols for network management are Secure Shell (SSH) and Transport Layer Security (TLS, RFC 2246). TLS was formerly known as Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). They help ensure secure remote login and other network services over insecure networks.

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a distributed security system developed by Lucent Technologies InterNetworking Systems. RADIUS is a common industry standard for user authentication, authorization, and accounting (RFC 2865). The RADIUS server is installed on a central computer at the customer's site. The RADIUS Network Access Server (NAS), which would be an IP-router or switch in LANs and a SAN switch in SANs, is responsible for passing user information to the RADIUS server, and then acting on the response, which is returned to either permit or deny the access of a user or device.

A common method to build trusted areas in IP networks is the use of firewalls. A firewall is an agent that screens network traffic and blocks traffic it believes to be inappropriate or dangerous. You will use a firewall to filter out addresses and protocols you do not want to pass into your LAN. A firewall will protect the switches connected to the management LAN, and allows only traffic from the management stations and certain protocols that you define.

More information about the IPSec working group can be found at:

<http://www.ietf.org/html.charters/ipsec-charter.html>



## 6.4 Best practices

As we said before, you may have the most sophisticated security system installed in your house. It is not worth anything if you leave the window open. Some of the security best practices at a high level, that you would expect to see at the absolute minimum, are:

- ▶ Default configurations and passwords should be changed.
- ▶ Configuration changes should be checked and double checked to ensure that only the data that is supposed to be accessed can be accessed.
- ▶ Management of devices usually takes a “telnet” form—with encrypted management protocols being used.
- ▶ Remote access often relies on unsecured networks. Make sure that the network is secure and that some form of protection is in place to guarantee only those with the correct authority are allowed to connect.
- ▶ Make sure that the operating systems that are connected are as secure as they ought to be, and if the operating systems are connected to an internal and external LAN, that this cannot be exploited. Access may be gotten by exploiting loose configurations.
- ▶ Assign the correct roles to administrators.
- ▶ Ensure the devices are in physically secure locations.
- ▶ Make sure the passwords are changed if the administrator leaves. Also ensure they are changed on a regular basis.

These will not guarantee that your information is 100 percent secure, but they will go some way to ensuring that all but the most ardent “thieves” are kept out.





## SAN exploitation and solutions

The added value of a SAN lies in the exploitation of its technology to provide tangible and desirable benefits to the business. Benefits range from increased availability and flexibility to additional functionality that can reduce application downtime. This chapter contains only a description of general SAN applications, and the kinds of components required to implement them. There is far more complexity than is presented here. For instance, this text will not cover how to choose one switch over another, or how many ISLs are necessary for a given SAN design. For detailed case studies refer to the IBM Redbook *SAN Product Design and Optimization Guide*, SG24-24-6384.

## 7.1 The SAN toolbox

A SAN is often depicted as a cloud with connecting lines from the cloud to servers and storage devices. This is a high-level representation of a SAN. We need a way to represent the components that make up the cloud. A simple and effective way to represent the various components of a SAN configuration is shown in Figure 7-1, the SAN toolbox.

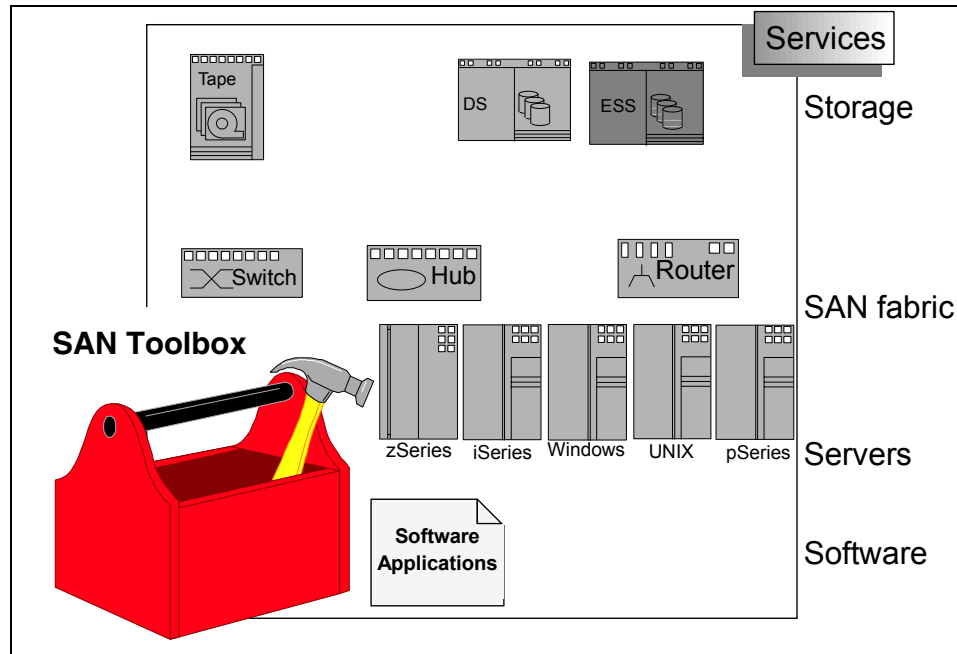


Figure 7-1 SAN toolbox

The toolbox contains all the necessary building blocks, or tools, to construct a SAN. We will use the icons shown in the toolbox in most of the figures in this chapter.

There are five basic SAN building blocks.

- ▶ *Services:* Services is a term that can be applied to support, education, consultation, and so on.
- ▶ *Storage elements:* The storage elements include tape drives and libraries, disk storage, optical storage, and intelligent storage servers (defined as storage subsystems, each having a storage control processor, cache storage, and cache management algorithms).

- ▶ *SAN fabric*: The SAN fabric is built from interconnecting elements such as FC hubs, FC switches, routers, bridges, and gateways. These components transfer Fibre Channel packets from server to storage, server to server, and storage to storage, depending on the configurations supported and the functions used.
- ▶ *Servers*: The servers are connected to the fabric. Applications on these servers can take advantage of the SAN's benefits.
- ▶ *Software*: There are two kinds of storage management applications: Fabric management applications used to configure, manage, and control the SAN fabric; and applications that exploit the SAN functions to bring business benefits such as improved backup/recovery and remote mirroring.

## 7.2 Strategic storage imperatives

Information technology is the lifeblood of any business, especially today when organization performance depends on information on demand. Business accountability hinges on it, laws and regulations mandate it, customers demand it, and effective business processes rely on it. With information on demand, businesses can respond quickly with the flexibility to meet customer requirements, market opportunities, or external threats. But as utterly valuable as information on demand has become, it also has become more costly to store, maintain, and protect.

To meet these challenges, IBM has taken a holistic approach to the problem, looking well beyond storage products alone to help you share, manage, and protect your data. To provide complete solutions for businesses using the on demand model, IBM has addressed three areas of IT.

### 7.2.1 Infrastructure simplification

Few would question the statement that IT infrastructures have grown more complex in recent years. The dramatic growth in the use of IT, combined with distributed computing architectures, is part of the reason. But business processes have also become more complex and integrated too, driving a greater need for complex interconnections among systems.

The added complexity that accompanies growth can stand in the way of fully realizing the benefits of IT. Infrastructure simplification is a way to look at the entire IT operation and help eliminate the complexity that can raise costs, reduce reliability, and create dependencies on specialized skills—factors making it harder to operate as an on demand business.

Three proven methods for simplifying an IT infrastructure are consolidation, virtualization, and automated management. Each technique can be applied to all areas that compose IT operations—servers, storage, and networks.

Within the storage arena, consolidation can include reducing the number of data centers and sharing fewer large-capacity storage systems among a greater number of application servers. Consolidated resources can cost less and can be easier to share and protect.

Storage virtualization involves a shift in thinking from physical to logical—treating storage as a logical pool of resources, not individual devices. Not only can this help simplify the storage environment, but it also can help increase utilization and availability.

The storage arena is ripe with opportunities to lower administrative costs through automation. Once tasks are automated, administrators can deal with more strategic issues. In addition, automation can help reduce errors and contribute to higher system performance.

## **7.2.2 Business continuity**

On demand businesses rely on their IT systems to conduct business. Everything must be working all the time. Nothing less is acceptable. A sound and comprehensive business continuity strategy encompasses high availability, near continuous operations, and disaster recovery. For each of these areas, the IBM TotalStorage Resiliency Family includes a comprehensive set of products that are compatible with multiple platforms.

## **7.2.3 Information lifecycle management**

The primary goal of information lifecycle management (ILM) techniques is to optimize the storage and management of information based on its value to your business. An ILM process can help a business maximize the value of information, from the moment of its creation to the moment of its disposal. Corporate governance policies, business processes, and compliance guidelines all influence ILM policies.

The primary capabilities from IBM that support ILM include optimized storage environments with tiered storage platforms, policy-based retention management software, content and records management applications, and non-erasable, non-rewritable media. The potential benefits to your business include improved risk management, optimum storage utilization, better handling of compliance issues, and lower costs.

## 7.3 Connectivity

Connecting servers to storage devices through a SAN fabric is often the first step taken in a phased SAN implementation. Fibre Channel attachments have the following benefits:

- ▶ Running SCSI over Fibre Channel for improved performance
- ▶ Extended connection distances (sometimes called remote storage)
- ▶ Enhanced addressability

Many implementations of Fibre Channel technology are simple configurations that remove some of the restrictions of existing storage environments, and allow you to build one common physical infrastructure. The SAN uses common cabling to the storage and the other peripheral devices. The handling of separate sets of cables, such as OEMI, ESCON, SCSI single-ended, SCSI differential, SCSI LVD, and others have caused the IT organization management much trauma as it attempted to treat each of these differently. One of the biggest problems is the special handling that is needed to circumvent the various distance limitations.

Installations without SANs commonly use SCSI cables to attach to their storage. SCSI has many restrictions, such as limited speed, a very small number of devices that can be attached, and severe distance limitations. Running SCSI over Fibre Channel helps to alleviate these restrictions. SCSI over Fibre Channel helps improve performance and enables more flexible addressability and much greater attachment distances compared to normal SCSI attachment.

A key requirement of this type of increased connectivity is providing consistent management interfaces for configuration, monitoring, and management of these SAN components. This type of connectivity allows companies to begin to reap the benefits of Fibre Channel technology, while also protecting their current storage investments.

## 7.4 Consolidation solutions

Before SANs, the concept of physical pooling of devices in a common area of the computing center was often just not possible, and when it was possible, it required expensive and unique extension technology. By introducing a network between the servers and the storage resources, this problem is minimized. Hardware interconnections become common across all servers and devices. For example, common trunk cables can be used for all servers, storage, and switches. When hardware is installed or needs to be moved, you can be assured that your physical infrastructure already supports it.

### 7.4.1 Adding capacity

The addition of storage capacity to one or more servers may be facilitated while the device is connected to a SAN. Depending on the SAN configuration and the server operating system, it may be possible to add or remove devices without stopping and restarting the server.

If new storage devices are attached to a section of a SAN with loop topology (mainly tape drives), the LIP may impact the operation of other devices on the loop. This may be overcome by quiescing operating system activity to all the devices on that particular loop before attaching the new device. This is far less of a problem with the latest generation of loop-capable switches. If storage devices are attached to a SAN by a switch, using the switch and management software it is possible to make the devices available to any system connected to the SAN.

### 7.4.2 Disk pooling

Disk pooling allows multiple servers to utilize a common pool of SAN-attached disk storage devices. Disk storage resources are pooled within a disk subsystem or across multiple IBM and non-IBM disk subsystems, and capacity is assigned to independent file systems supported by the operating systems on servers. The servers are potentially a heterogeneous mix of UNIX, Windows NT, and even OS/390.

Storage can be dynamically added to the disk pool and assigned to any SAN-attached server when and where it is needed. This provides efficient access to shared disk resources without a level of indirection associated with a separate file server, since storage is effectively *directly attached* to all the servers, and efficiencies of scalability result from consolidation of storage capacity.

When storage is added, zoning can be used to restrict access to the added capacity. As many devices (or LUNs) can be attached to a single port, access can be further restricted using LUN-masking, that is, specifying who can access a specific device or LUN.

Attaching and detaching storage devices can be done under the control of a common administrative interface. Storage capacity can be added without stopping the server, and can be immediately made available to applications.

Figure 7-2 on page 193 shows an example of disk storage pooling across two servers.



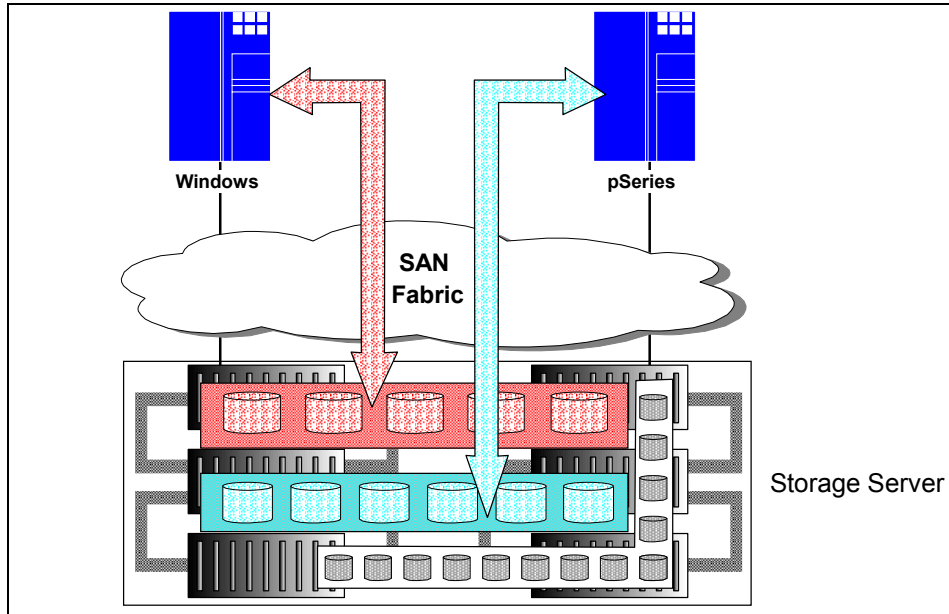


Figure 7-2 Disk pooling

One server is assigned a pool of disks formatted to the requirements of the file system, and the second server is assigned another pool of disks, possibly in another format. The third pool shown may be space not yet allocated or pre-formatted disk for future use.

### 7.4.3 Tape pooling

Tape pooling addresses the problem faced today in an open systems environment in which multiple servers are unable to share tape resources across multiple hosts. Older methods of sharing a device between hosts consist of either manually switching the tape device from one host to the other, or writing applications that communicate with SAN connected servers through distributed programming.

Tape pooling allows applications on one or more servers to share tape drives, libraries, and cartridges in a SAN environment in an automated, secure manner. With a SAN infrastructure, each host can directly address the tape device as if it were connected to all of the hosts.

Tape drives, libraries, and cartridges are owned by either a central manager or a peer-to-peer management implementation, and are dynamically allocated and reallocated to systems as required, based on demand. Tape pooling allows for

resource sharing, automation, improved tape management, and added security for tape media.

Software is required to manage the assignment and locking of the tape devices in order to serialize tape access. Tape pooling is a very efficient and cost-effective way of sharing expensive tape resources, such as automated tape libraries. Tape libraries can even be shared between operating systems.

At any particular instant in time, a tape drive can be owned by one system, as shown in Figure 7-3.

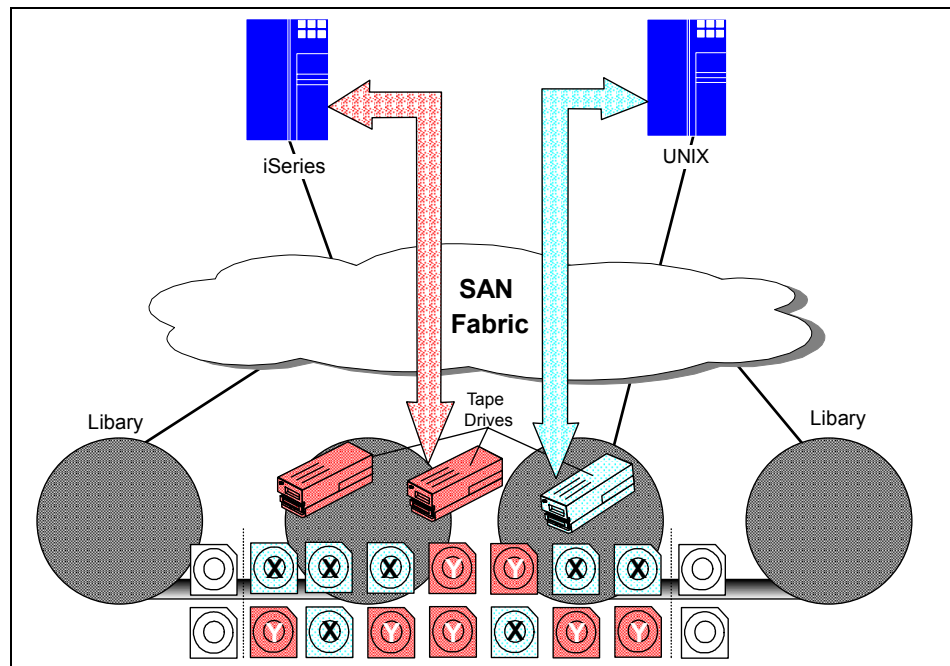


Figure 7-3 Tape pooling

In this example, the iSeries server currently has two tape drives assigned, and the UNIX server has only one drive assigned. The tape cartridges, physical or virtual, in the libraries are assigned to different applications or groups and contain current data, or are assignable to servers (in scratch groups) if they are not yet used, or they no longer contain current data.

#### 7.4.4 Server clustering

SAN architecture naturally lends itself to scalable clustering in a share-all situation, because a cluster of homogenous servers can see a single system

image of the data. While this was possible with SCSI using multiple pathing, scalability is an issue because of the distance constraints of SCSI. SCSI allows for distances of up to 25 meters, and the size of SCSI connectors limits the number of connections to servers or subsystems.

A SAN allows for efficient load balancing in distributed processing application environments. Applications that are processor-constrained on one server can be executed on a different server with more processor capacity. In order to do this, both servers must be able to access the same data volumes, and serialization of access to data must be provided by the application or operating system services. Today, the S/390 Parallel Sysplex® provides services and operating system facilities for seamless load balancing across many members of a server complex.

In addition to this advantage, SAN architecture also lends itself to exploitation in a failover situation, whereby the secondary system can take over upon failure of the primary system and have direct addressability to the storage that was used by the primary system. This improves reliability in a clustered system environment, because it eliminates downtime due to processor unavailability.

Figure 7-4 on page 196 shows an example of clustering. Servers S1 and S2 share IBM Enterprise Storage Servers #1 and 2. If S1 fails, S2 can access the data on ESS #1. The example also shows that ESS #1 is mirrored to ESS #2. Moving the standby server, S2, to the remote WAN connected site would allow for operations to continue in the case of a disaster being declared.

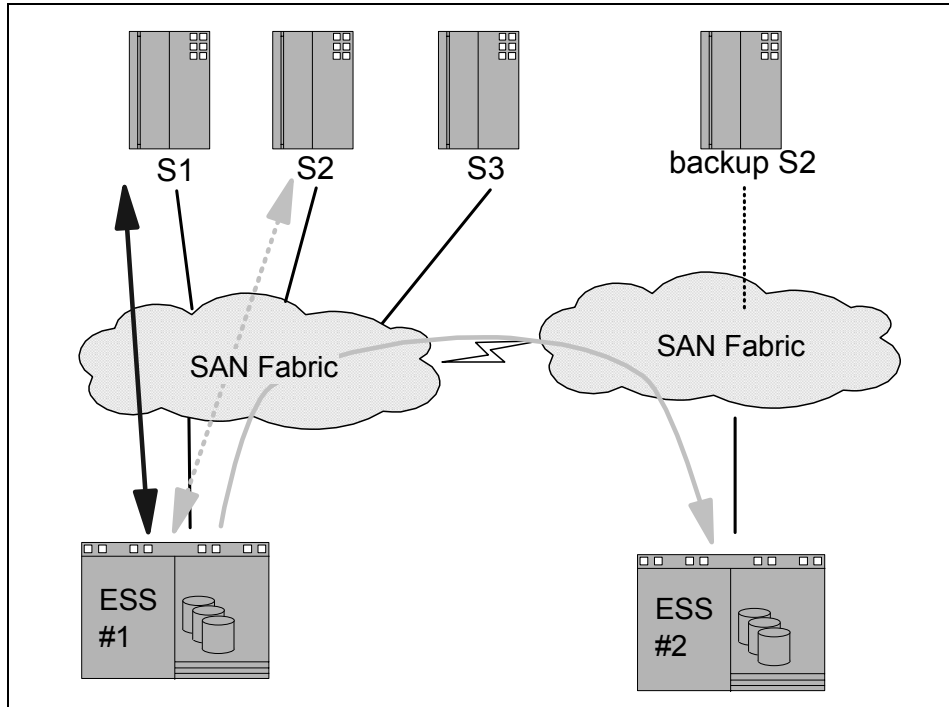


Figure 7-4 Server clustering

## 7.4.5 SAN island consolidation

Now, we can improve scalability, security, and manageability by enabling devices in separate SAN fabrics to communicate without merging fabrics into a single, large SAN fabric. This capability enables customers to initially deploy separate SAN solutions at the departmental and data center levels and then to consolidate them into large enterprise SAN solutions as their experience and requirements grow and change.

Customers have deployed multiple SAN islands for different applications with different fabric switch solutions. Growing availability of iSCSI server capabilities has created the opportunity for low-cost iSCSI server integration and storage consolidation. Additionally, depending on the choice of router, they will provide FCIP or iFCP capability.

The new SAN routers provide an iSCSI Gateway Service to integrate low-cost Ethernet-connected servers to existing SAN infrastructures. It also provides Fibre Channel, FC-FC Routing Service to interconnect multiple SAN islands without requiring the fabrics to merge into a single large SAN.

In Figure 7-5 we show an example using a multiprotocol router to extend SAN capabilities across the enterprise.

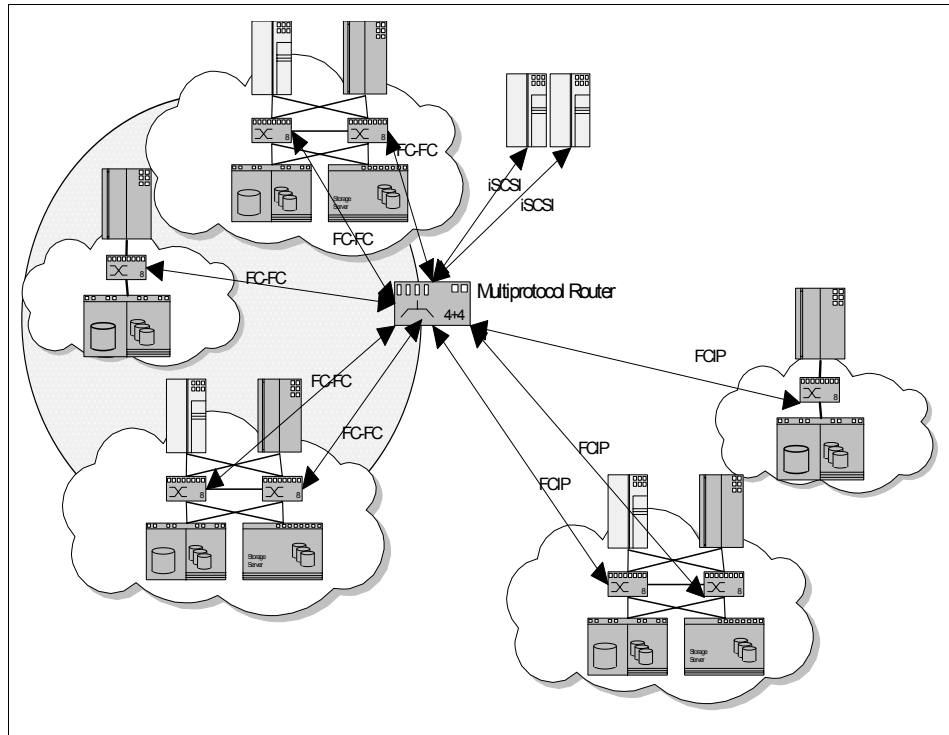


Figure 7-5 SAN island consolidation

A multiprotocol capable router solution brings a number of benefits to the marketplace. In the example shown there are a number of discrete SAN islands, and a number of different protocols involved. For a merge of the SAN fabric to take place, it would involve a number of disruptive and potentially expensive actions such as:

- ▶ Downtime
- ▶ Purchase of additional switches/ports
- ▶ Purchase of HBAs
- ▶ Migration costs
- ▶ Configuration costs
- ▶ Purchase of additional licenses
- ▶ Ongoing maintenance

However, by installing a multiprotocol router the advantages are:

- ▶ Least disruptive method
- ▶ No need to purchase extra HBAs

- ▶ Minimum number of ports to connect to the router
- ▶ No expensive downtime
- ▶ No expensive migration costs
- ▶ No ongoing maintenance costs other than router
- ▶ Support of other protocols
- ▶ Increases ROI by consolidating resource
- ▶ Can be used to isolate the SAN environment to be more secure

There are many more benefits that the router can provide. In this example, an FC-FC routing service that negates the need for a costly SAN fabric merge exercise, the advantages are apparent and real. The router can also be used to provide:

- ▶ Device connectivity across multiple SANs for infrastructure simplification
- ▶ Tape backup consolidation for information lifecycle management
- ▶ Long-distance SAN extension for business continuance
- ▶ Low-cost server connectivity to SAN resources

## 7.5 Pooling solutions, storage, and data sharing

The term *data sharing* refers to accessing the same data from multiple systems and servers. It is often used synonymously with storage partitioning and disk pooling. True data sharing goes a step beyond sharing storage capacity with pooling, in that multiple servers are actually sharing the data on the storage devices. The architecture that the zSeries servers are built on have supported data sharing since the early 1970s.

While data sharing is not a solution that is exclusive to SANs, the SAN architecture can take advantage of the connectivity of multiple hosts to the same storage in order to enable data to be shared more efficiently than through the services of a file server or NAS unit, as is often the case today. SAN connectivity has the potential to provide sharing services to heterogeneous hosts, including UNIX, Windows, and z/OS.

### 7.5.1 From storage partitioning to data sharing

Storage partitioning is usually the first stage towards true data sharing, usually implemented in a server and storage consolidation project. There are multiple stages or phases towards true data sharing:

- ▶ Logical volume partitioning
- ▶ File pooling
- ▶ True data sharing

## Logical volume partitioning

Storage partitioning does not represent a true data sharing solution. It is essentially just a way of splitting the capacity of a single storage server into to multiple pieces. The storage subsystems are connected to multiple servers, and storage capacity is partitioned among the various subsystems.

Logical disk volumes are defined within the storage subsystem and assigned to servers. The logical disk is addressable from the server. A logical disk may be a subset or superset of disks only addressable by the subsystem itself. A logical disk volume can also be defined as subsets of several physical disks (striping). The capacity of a disk volume is set when defined. For example, two logical disks, with different capacities (for example, 50 GB and 150 GB) may be created from a single 300 GB hardware addressable disk, with each being assigned to a different server, leaving 100 GB of unassigned capacity. A single 2000 GB logical disk may also be created from multiple real disks that exist in different storage subsystems. The underlying storage controller must have the necessary logic to manage the volume grouping, and guarantee access securely to the data.

Figure 7-6 shows multiple servers accessing logical volumes created using the different alternatives mentioned above. (The logical volume *Another volume* is not assigned to any server.)

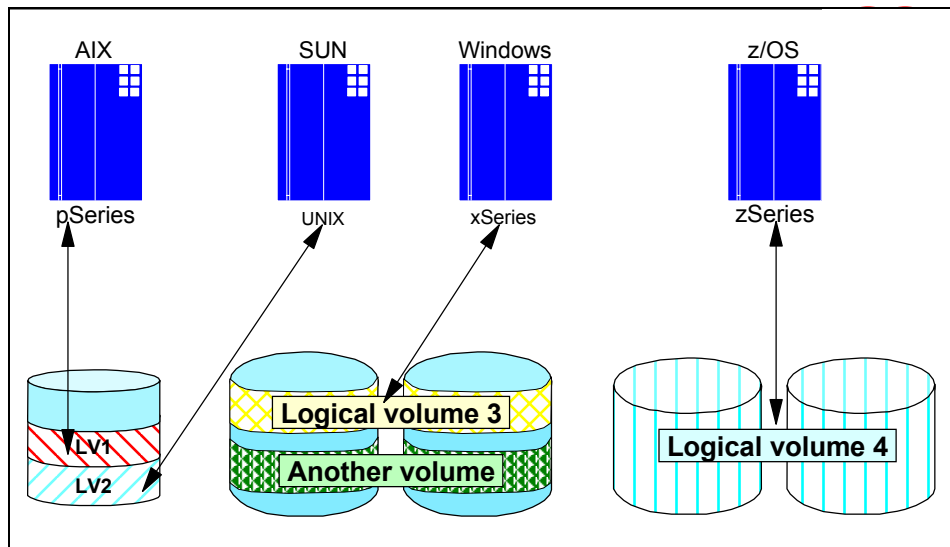


Figure 7-6 Logical volume partitioning

## File pooling

File pooling assigns disk space (as needed) to contain the actual file being created. Instead of assigning disk capacity to individual servers on a physical or logical disk basis, or by using the operating system functions (as in z/OS, for example) to manage the capacity, file pooling presents a mountable name space to the application servers. This is similar to the way NFS behaves today. The difference is that there is direct channel access, not network access as with NFS, between the application servers and the disk(s) where the file is stored. Disk capacity is assigned only when the file is created and released when the file is deleted. The files can be shared between servers in the same way (operating system support, locking, security, and so on) as if they were stored on a shared physical or logical disk.

Figure 7-7 shows multiple servers accessing files in shared storage space. The unassigned storage space can be reassigned to any server on an as-needed basis when new files are created.

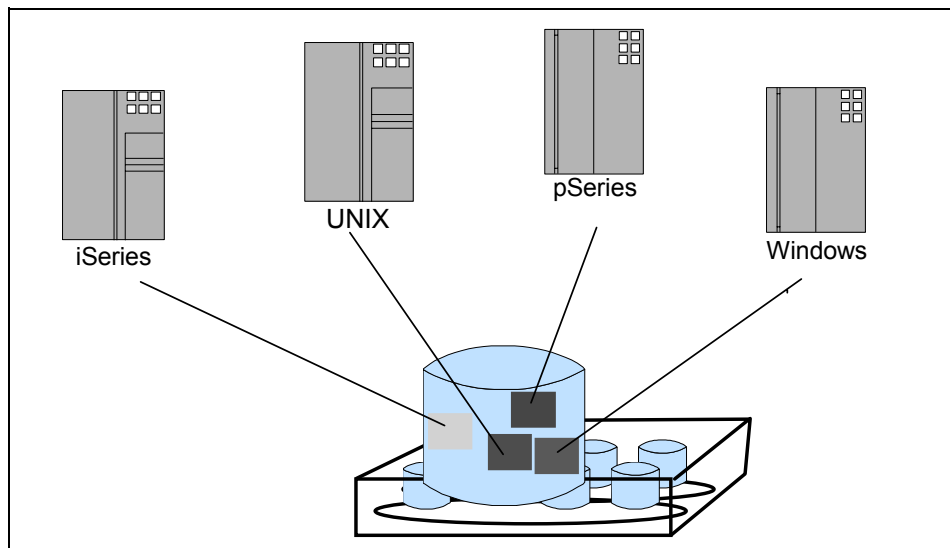


Figure 7-7 File pooling

## True data sharing

In true data sharing, the same copy of data is accessed concurrently by multiple servers. This allows for considerable storage savings, and may be the basis



upon which storage consolidation can be built. There are various levels of data sharing:

- ▶ Sequential, point-in-time, or one-at-a-time access. This is really the serial reuse of data. It is assigned first to one application, then to another application, in the same or a different server, and so on.
- ▶ Multi-application simultaneous read access. In this model, multiple applications in one or multiple servers can read data, but only one application can update it, thereby eliminating any integrity problems.
- ▶ Multi-application simultaneous read and write access. This is similar to the situation described above, but all hosts can update the data. There are two versions of this—one where all applications are on the same platform (homogeneous), and one where the applications are on different platforms (heterogeneous).

With true data sharing, multiple reads and writes can happen at the same time. Multiple read operations are not an issue, but multiple write operations can potentially access and overwrite the same information. A serialization mechanism is needed to guarantee that the data written by multiple applications is written to the disk in an orderly way. Serialization mechanisms may be defined to serialize from a group of physical or logical disk volumes to an individual physical block of data within a file or database.

Such a form of data sharing requires complicated co-ordination across multiple servers on a level far greater scale than mere file-locking.

### ***Homogeneous data sharing***

Figure 7-8 on page 202 shows multiple hosts accessing and sharing the same data. The data encoding mechanism across these hosts is common and usually platform dependent. The hosts or the storage subsystem must provide a serialization mechanism for accessing the data to ensure write integrity and serialization.

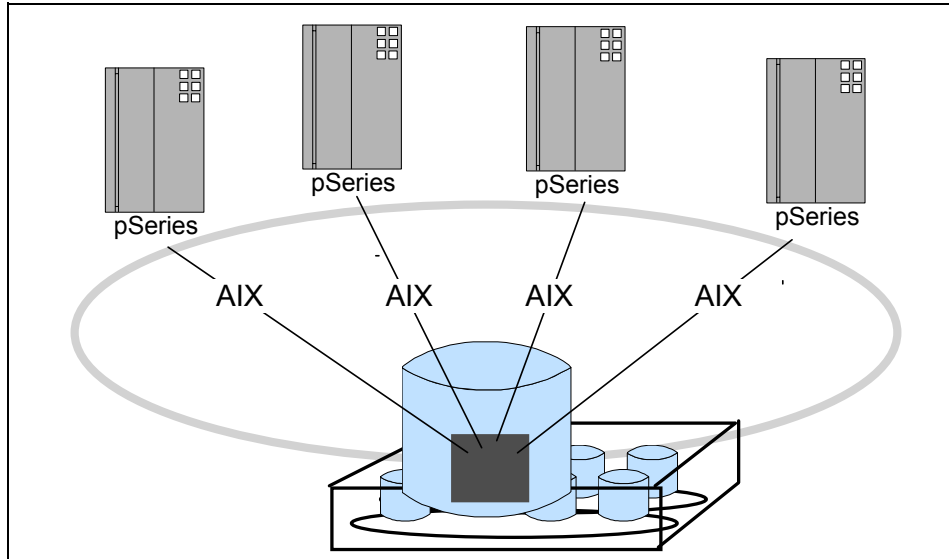


Figure 7-8 Homogeneous data sharing

### **Heterogeneous data sharing**

In heterogeneous data sharing (as illustrated in Figure 7-9 on page 203) different operating systems access the same data. The issues are similar to those in homogeneous data sharing with one major addition: The data must be stored in a common file system, but may be with a common encoding and other conventions; or the file system logic will be needed to perform the necessary conversions of EBCDIC or ASCII, and any other differences. Thus, we have the requirement for a SAN distributed file system. With the appropriate technology it will be possible to provide access to the files.

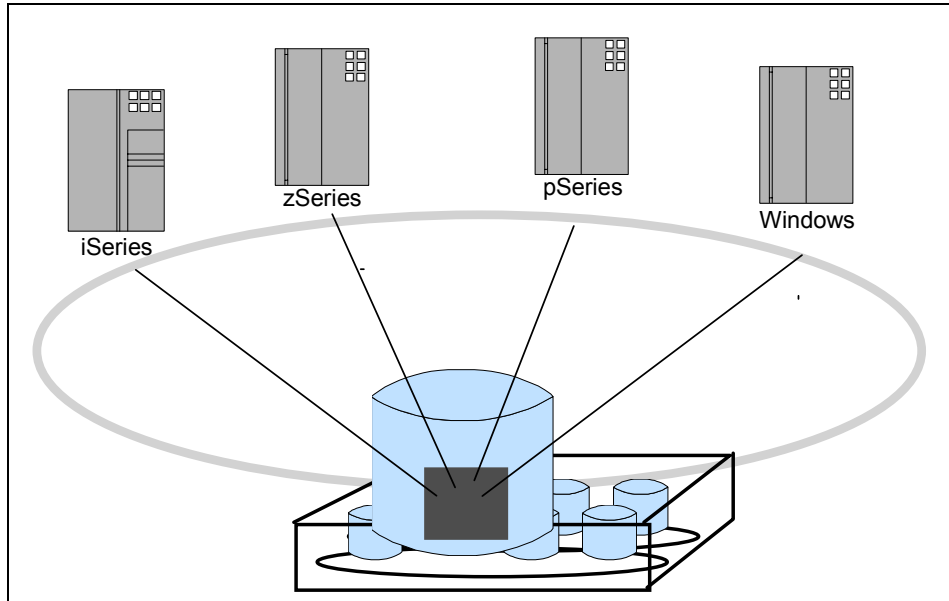


Figure 7-9 Heterogeneous data sharing

## 7.6 Data movement solutions

Data movement solutions require that data be moved between similar or dissimilar storage devices. Today, data movement or replication is performed by the server or multiple servers. The server reads data from the source device, maybe transmitting the data across a LAN or WAN to another server, and then the data is written to the destination device. This task ties up server processor cycles and causes the data to travel twice over the SAN—once from source device to a server, and then a second time from a server to a destination device.

The objective of SAN data movement solutions is to be able to avoid copying data through the server (server-free), and across a LAN or WAN (LAN-free), thus freeing up server processor cycles and LAN or WAN bandwidth. Today, this data replication can be accomplished in a SAN through the use of an intelligent gateway that supports the third-party copy SCSI-3 command. Third-party copy implementations are also referred to as outboard data movement or copy implementations.

## 7.6.1 Copy services

The following sections list some of the copy services available.

### Traditional copy

One of the most frequent tasks for a space manager is moving files through the use of various tools. Another frequent user of traditional copy is space management software, such as Tivoli's TSM, during the reclamation or recycle process. With SAN outboard data movement, traditional copy can be performed server-free, therefore making it easier to plan and faster to execute.

### T-0 copy

Another outboard copy service enabled by Fibre Channel technology is T-0 (time=zero) copy. This is the process of taking a snapshot, or freezing the data (databases, files, or volumes) at a certain time, and then allowing applications to update the original data while the frozen copy is duplicated. With the flexibility and extendability that Fibre Channel brings, these snapshot copies can be made to local or remote devices. The requirement for this type of function is driven by the need for 24x7 availability of key database systems.

### Remote copy

Remote copy is a business requirement used in order to protect data from disasters, or to migrate data from one location to avoid application downtime for planned outages such as hardware or software maintenance.

Today, remote copy solutions are either synchronous or asynchronous, and they require different levels of automation in order to guarantee data consistency across disks and disk subsystems. Today's remote copy solutions are implemented only for disks at a physical or logical volume level.

In the future, with more advanced storage management techniques such as outboard hierarchical storage management and file pooling, remote copy solutions need to be implemented at the file level. This implies more data to be copied, and requires more advanced technologies to guarantee data consistency across files, disks, and tape in multi-server heterogeneous environments. A SAN is required to support bandwidth and management of such environments.

## 7.7 Business continuance solutions

Today, data protection of multiple network-attached servers is performed according to one of two backup and recovery paradigms: Local backup and recovery, or network backup and recovery.

The local backup and recovery paradigm has the advantage of speed, because the data does not travel over the network. However, with a local backup and recovery approach, there are costs for overhead (because local devices must be acquired for each server, and are thus difficult to utilize efficiently), and management overhead (because of the need to support multiple tape drives, libraries, and mount operations).

The network backup and recovery paradigm is more cost-effective, because it allows for the centralization of storage devices using one or more network-attached devices. This centralization allows for a better return on investment, as the installed devices will be utilized more efficiently. One tape library can be shared across many servers. Management of a network backup and recovery environment is often simpler than the local backup and recovery environment, because it eliminates the potential need to perform manual tape mount operations on multiple servers.

SANs combine the best of both approaches. This is accomplished by central management of backup and recovery, assigning one or more tape devices to each server, and using FC protocols to transfer data directly from the disk device to the tape device, or vice versa over the SAN.

In the following sections we discuss these approaches in more detail.

### **7.7.1 LAN-free data movement**

The network backup and recovery paradigm implies that data flows from the backup and recovery client (usually a file or database server) to the backup and recovery server, or between backup and recovery servers, over a network connection. The same is true for archive or hierarchical storage management applications. Often the network connection is the bottleneck for data throughput. This is due to network connection bandwidth limitations. The SAN can be used instead of the LAN as a transport network.

#### **Tape drive and tape library sharing**

A basic requirement for LAN-free or server-free backup and recovery is the ability to share tape drives and tape libraries, as described in 7.4.3, “Tape pooling” on page 193, between backup and recovery servers, and between a backup and recovery server, and its backup and recovery client (usually a file or database server). Network-attached end-user backup and recovery clients will still use the network for data transportation.

In the tape drive and tape library sharing approach, the backup and recovery server or client that requests a backup copy to be copied to or from tape will read or write the data directly to the tape device using SCSI commands. This approach bypasses the network transport’s latency and network protocol path

length; therefore, it can offer improved backup and recovery speeds in cases where the network is the constraining factor. The data is read from the source device and written directly to the destination device.

Figure 7-10 shows an example of tape drive or tape library sharing.

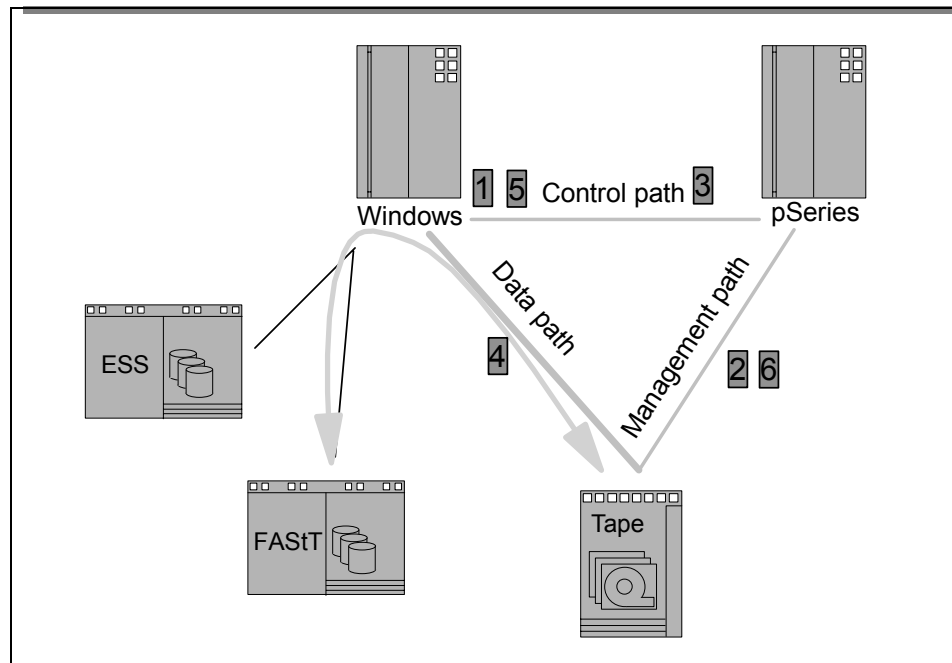


Figure 7-10 LAN-less backup and recovery

Where:

1. A backup and recovery client requests one or more tapes to perform the backup operations. This request is sent over a control path, which could be a standard network connection between client and server. The backup and recovery server then assigns one or more tape drives to the client for the duration of the backup operation.
2. The server then requests the tapes required to be mounted into the drives using the management path.
3. The server then notifies the client that the tapes are ready.
4. The client performs the backup or recovery operations over the data path.
5. When the client completes the operations, it notifies the server that it has completed the backup or recovery, and the tapes can be released.

- The server requests the tape cartridges to be dismounted, using the management path for control flow.

## 7.7.2 Server-free data movement

In the preceding approaches, server intervention was always required to copy the data from source device to target device. The data was read from the source device into the server memory, and then written from the server memory to the target device. The server-free data movement approach avoids the use of any server or IP network for data movement, only using the SAN for carrying out the SCSI-3 third-party copy function.

Figure 7-11 illustrates this approach. Management of the tape drives and cartridges is handled as in the preceding example. The client issues a third-party copy SCSI-3 command that will cause the data to be copied from the source device to the target device. No server processor cycle or IP-network bandwidth is used.

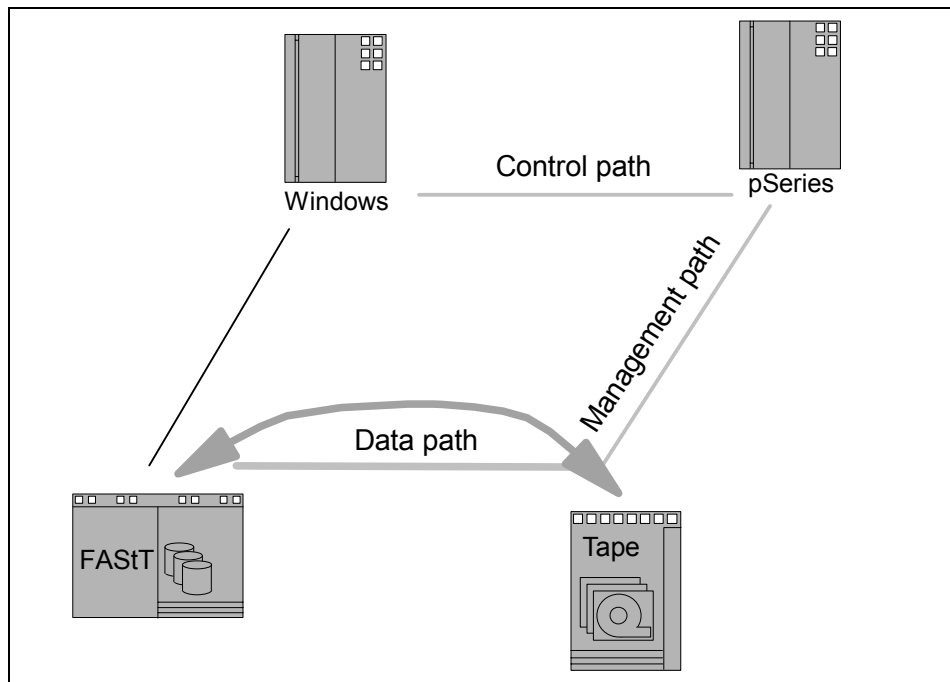


Figure 7-11 Server-free data movement for backup and recovery

In the example shown in Figure 7-11, the backup and recovery client issued the third-party copy command to perform a backup or recovery using tape pooling. Another implementation would be for the backup and recovery server to initiate

the third-party copy SCSI-3 command on request from the client, using disk pooling.

The third-party copy SCSI-3 command defines block-level operations, as is the case for all SCSI commands. The SCSI protocol is not aware of the file system or database structures. Using third-party copy for file-level data movement requires the file systems to provide mapping functions between file system files and device block addresses. This mapping is a first step towards sophisticated database backup and recovery, log archiving, and so on.

The server part of a backup and recovery application also performs many other tasks requiring server processor cycles for data movement; for example, data migration and reclamation/recycle. During reclamation, data is read from the tape cartridge to be reclaimed into server memory, and then written from server memory to a new tape cartridge.

The server-free data movement approach avoids the use of extensive server processor cycles for data movement, as shown in Figure 7-12.

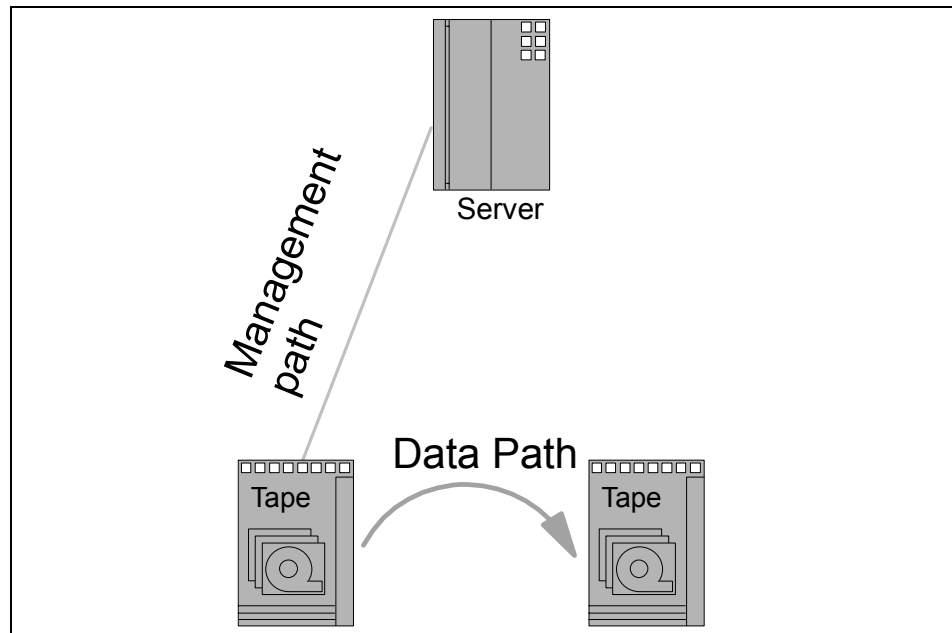


Figure 7-12 Server-free data movement for tape reclamation



### 7.7.3 Disaster backup and recovery

SANs can facilitate disaster backup solutions because of the greater flexibility allowed in connecting storage devices to servers, and also the greater distances that are supported when compared with SCSI's restrictions. It is possible when using a SAN infrastructure to perform extended distance backups for disaster recovery within a campus or city, as shown in Figure 7-13.

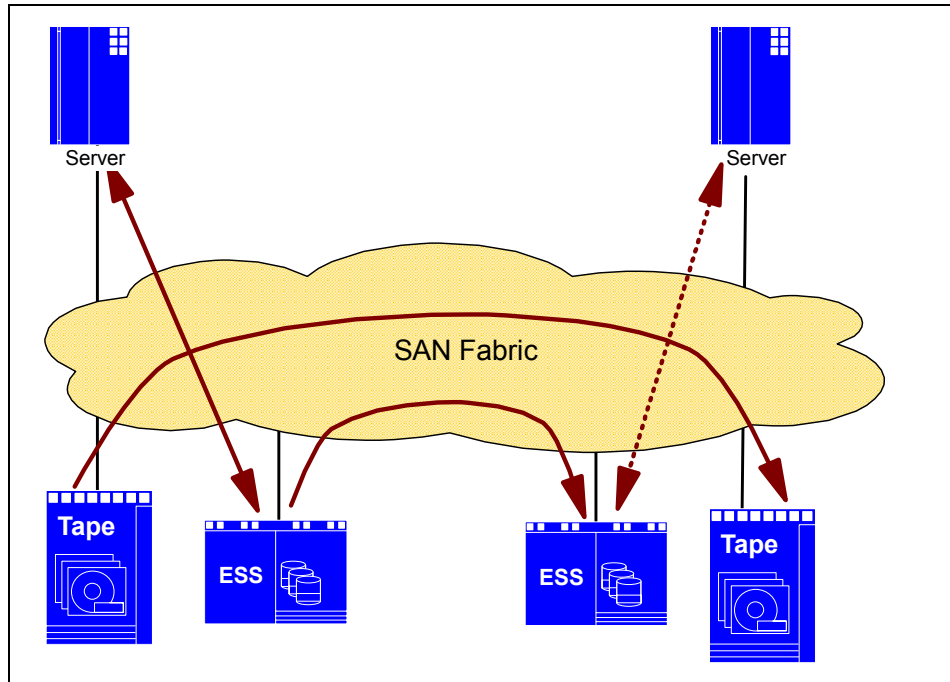


Figure 7-13 Disaster backup and recovery

When longer distances are required, SANs must be connected using gateways and WANs, similar to the situation discussed in 7.4.4, “Server clustering” on page 194, and shown in Figure 7-4 on page 196.

Depending on business requirements, disaster protection implementations may make use of copy services implemented in disk subsystems and tape libraries (that might be implemented using SAN services), SAN copy services, and most likely a combination of both.

Additionally, services and solutions—similar to Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS) for zSeries servers, available today from IBM Global Services—will be required to monitor and manage these environments.





## SAN standards and organizations

The success and adoption of any new technology, and any improvement to existing technology, is greatly influenced by *standards*. Standards are the basis for the interoperability of hardware and software from different, and often rival, vendors. Although de facto standards bodies and organizations such as the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), American National Standards Institute (ANSI), and International Organization for Standardization (ISO) publish these formal standards, other organizations and industry associations, such as the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) and the Fibre Channel Industry Association (FCIA), play a significant role in defining the standards and market development and direction.

The major vendors in the SAN industry recognize the need for standards, especially in the areas of interoperability interfaces, management information base (MIB), application programming interfaces (API), Common Information Model (CIM), and so on, as these are significant for the basis for the wide acceptance of SANs. Standards such as these will allow customers a greater breadth of choice, and will lead to the deployment of cross-platform, mixed-protocol, multi-vendor, enterprise-wide SAN solutions. SAN technology has a number of industry associations and standard bodies evolving, developing, and publishing the SAN standards.

As you might expect, IBM actively participates in most of these organizations. The roles of these associations and bodies fall into three categories.

- ▶ Market development

These associations are architecture development organizations that are formed early in the product life cycle, have a marketing focus, and perform the market development, gather the requirements, provide customer education, arrange user conferences, and so on. This includes organizations such as SNIA, FCIA, and the SCSI Trade Association (STA). Some of these organizations, such as SNIA, also help define the defacto industry standards, and thus have multiple roles.

- ▶ Defacto standards

These organizations and bodies tend to be formed from two sources. They include working groups within the market development organizations, such as SNIA and the FCIA. Others are partnerships between groups of companies in the industry, such as Jini and Fibre Alliance, which work as pressure groups towards defacto industry standards.

They offer architectural definitions, write white papers, arrange technical conferences, and may reference implementations based on developments by their own partner companies. They may submit these specifications for formal standards acceptance and approval.

- ▶ Formal standards

These are the formal standards organizations such as the IETF, IEEE, and ANSI, which are in place to review for approval, and publish standards defined and submitted by the preceding two categories of organizations.

## 8.1 SAN industry associations and organizations

A number of industry associations, alliances, consortium, and formal standards bodies are involved in the SAN standards; these include SNIA, FCIA, STA, INCITS, IETF, ANSI, and IEEE. A brief description of the roles of some of these organizations are described in the following topics.

### 8.1.1 Storage Networking Industry Association

The Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) is an international computer system industry forum of developers, integrators, and IT professionals who evolve and promote storage networking technology and solutions. SNIA was formed to ensure that storage networks become efficient, complete, and trusted solutions across the IT community. IBM is one of the founding members of this

organization. SNIA is uniquely committed to networking solutions into a broader market.

SNIA is using its Storage Management Initiative (SMI) and its Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S) to create and promote adoption of a highly functional interoperable management interface for multi-vendor storage networking products. SMI-S makes multi-vendor storage networks simpler to implement, and easier to manage. IBM has led the industry in not only supporting the SMI-S initiative, but also using it across its hardware and software product lines. The specification covers fundamental operations of communications between management console clients and devices, auto-discovery, access, security, the ability to provision volumes and disk resources, LUN mapping and masking, and other management operations.

For additional information on the various activities of SNIA, see its Web site at:

<http://www.snia.org>

### **8.1.2 Fibre Channel Industry Association**

The Fibre Channel Industry Association (FCIA) is organized as a not-for-profit, mutual benefit corporation. The FCIA mission is to nurture and help develop the broadest market for Fibre Channel products. This is done through market development, education, standards monitoring, and fostering interoperability among members' products. IBM is a board member in the FCIA.

The FCIA also administers the SANmark, SANmark Qualified Test Provider programs. SANmark is a certification process designed to ensure that Fibre Channel devices, such as HBAs and switches, conform to Fibre Channel standards. The SANmark Qualified Test Provider program was established to increase the available pool of knowledgeable test providers for equipment vendors.

For additional information on the various activities of the FCIA, visit the Web site:

<http://www.fibrechannel.org>

For more information on SANmark, visit the Web site:

<http://www.sanmark.org/>

### **8.1.3 SCSI Trade Association**

The SCSI Trade Association (STA) was formed to promote the use and understanding of the small computer system interface (SCSI) parallel interface technology. The STA provides a focal point for communicating SCSI benefits to the market, and influences the evolution of SCSI into the future. IBM is one of the

founding members of STA. As part of its current work, and as part of its roadmap, STA has Serial Attached SCSI defined as the logical evolution of SCSI.

For additional information visit the Web site:

<http://www.scsita.org>

### **8.1.4 International Committee for Information Technology Standards**

The International Committee for Information Technology Standards (INCITS) is the primary US focus of standardization in the field of information and communication technologies (ICT), encompassing storage, processing, transfer, display, management, organization, and retrieval of information. As such, INCITS also serves as ANSI's Technology Advisory Group for ISO/IEC Joint Technical Committee 1. JTC 1 is responsible for international standardization in the field of Information Technology.

For storage management, the draft standard defines a method for the interoperable management of heterogeneous SANs, describes an object-oriented, XML-based, messaging-based interface designed to support the specific requirements of managing devices in and through SANs.

For additional information visit the Web site:

<http://www.incits.org>

### **8.1.5 INCITS Technical Committee T11**

The Technical Committee T11 is the committee within INCITS responsible for Device Level Interfaces. T11 has been producing interface standards for high-performance and mass storage applications since the 1970s. At the time of writing, the T11 program of work includes two current and three complete standards development projects.

Proposals for Fibre Channel transport, topology, generic services, and physical and media standards is available at Web site:

<http://www.t11.org>

### **8.1.6 Information Storage Industry Consortium**

The Information Storage Industry Consortium (INSIC) is the research consortium for the worldwide information storage industry, whose mission is to enhance the growth and technical vitality of the information storage industry, and to advance the state of information storage technology.

INSIC membership consists of more than 65 corporations, universities, and government organizations with common interests in the field of digital information storage. IBM is a founding member of INSIC. For more information, visit the Web site:

<http://www.insic.org>

### **8.1.7 Internet Engineering Task Force**

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) is a large, open international community of network designers, operators, vendors, and researchers concerned with the evolution of the Internet architecture, and the smooth operation of the Internet. An IETF working group, the Internet and Management Support for Storage, is chartered to address the areas of IPv4 over Fibre Channel, an initial Fibre Channel Management MIB, other storage-related MIBs for other storage transports such as INCITS T10 Serial Attached SCSI (SAS), or SCSI command-specific commands. In addition, they are also responsible for iSCSI. An IBMer is the current chairman of IETF.

For additional information on the IETF, visit the Web site:

<http://www.ietf.org>

### **8.1.8 American National Standards Institute**

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) does not itself develop American national standards. Its mission is to enhance both the global competitiveness of U.S. business and the U.S. quality of life by promoting and facilitating voluntary consensus standards and conformity assessment systems, and safeguarding their integrity. It does this by working closely with organizations such as ISO.

It facilitates development by establishing consensus among qualified groups. IBM participates in numerous committees, including those for Fibre Channel and SANs. For more information on ANSI, visit the Web site:

<http://www.ansi.org>

### **8.1.9 Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers**

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is a non-profit, technical professional association of more than 365,000 individual members in 175 countries. Through its members, the IEEE is a leading authority in technical areas ranging from computer engineering, biomedical technology, and telecommunications, to electric power, aerospace, and consumer electronics,

among others. It administers the Organizational Unique Identifier (OUI) list used for the addressing scheme within Fibre Channel.

For additional information on IEEE, visit the Web site:

<http://www.ieee.org>

For additional information on IEEE and its standards work, visit the Web site:

<http://standards.ieee.org/>

### **8.1.10 Distributed Management Task Force**

With more than 3,000 active participants, the Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF) is the industry organization leading the development of management standards and integration technology for enterprise and Internet environments. DMTF standards provide common management infrastructure components for instrumentation, control, and communication in a platform-independent and technology-neutral way. DMTF technologies include common information models (CIM), communication/control protocols (WBEM), and core management services/utilities.

For more information visit the Web site:

<http://www.dmtf.org/>



# Glossary

**8b/10b** A data-encoding scheme developed by IBM, translating byte-wide data to an encoded 10-bit format. Fibre Channel's FC-1 level defines this as the method to be used to encode and decode data transmissions over the Fibre Channel.

**active configuration** In an ESCON environment, the ESCON Director configuration determined by the status of the current set of connectivity attributes. Contrast with *saved configuration*.

**Adapter** A hardware unit that aggregates other I/O units, devices, or communications links to a system bus.

**ADSM** ADSTAR Distributed Storage Manager.

**Agent** (1) In the client-server model, the part of the system that performs information preparation and exchange on behalf of a client or server application. (2) In SNMP, the word agent refers to the managed system. See *Management Agent*.

**Aggregation** In the Storage Networking Industry Association Storage Model (SNIA), *virtualization* is known as *aggregation*. This aggregation can take place at the file level or at the level of individual blocks that are transferred to disk.

**AIT** Advanced Intelligent Tape - A magnetic tape format by Sony that uses 8mm cassettes, but is only used in specific drives.

**AL** See *Arbitrated Loop*.

**allowed** In an ESCON Director, the attribute that, when set, establishes dynamic

connectivity capability. Contrast with *prohibited*.

**AL\_PA** Arbitrated Loop Physical Address.

**ANSI** American National Standards Institute - The primary organization for fostering the development of technology standards in the United States. The ANSI family of Fibre Channel documents provide the standards basis for the Fibre Channel architecture and technology. See *FC-PH*.

**APAR** See *authorized program analysis report*.

**authorized program analysis report (APAR)** A report of a problem caused by a suspected defect in a current, unaltered release of a program.

**Arbitration** The process of selecting one respondent from a collection of several candidates that request service concurrently.

**Arbitrated Loop** A Fibre Channel interconnection technology that allows up to 126 participating node ports and one participating fabric port to communicate.

**ATL** Automated Tape Library - Large scale tape storage system, which uses multiple tape drives and mechanisms to address 50 or more cassettes.

**ATM** Asynchronous Transfer Mode - A type of packet switching that transmits fixed-length units of data.

**Backup** A copy of computer data that is used to recreate data that has been lost, mislaid,

corrupted, or erased. The act of creating a copy of computer data that can be used to recreate data that has been lost, mislaid, corrupted or erased.

**Bandwidth** Measure of the information capacity of a transmission channel.

**basic mode** A S/390 or zSeries central processing mode that does not use logical partitioning. Contrast with *logically partitioned (LPAR) mode*.

**blocked** In an ESCON and FICON Director, the attribute that, when set, removes the communication capability of a specific port. Contrast with *unblocked*.

**Bridge** (1) A component used to attach more than one I/O unit to a port. (2) A data communications device that connects two or more networks and forwards packets between them. The bridge may use similar or dissimilar media and signaling systems. It operates at the data link level of the OSI model. Bridges read and filter data packets and frames.

**Bridge/Router** A device that can provide the functions of a bridge, router or both concurrently. A bridge/router can route one or more protocols, such as TCP/IP, and bridge all other traffic. See also *Bridge, Router*.

**Broadcast** Sending a transmission to all N\_Ports on a fabric.

**byte.** (1) In fibre channel, an eight-bit entity prior to encoding or after decoding, with its least significant bit denoted as bit 0, and most significant bit as bit 7. The most significant bit is shown on the left side in FC-FS unless otherwise shown. (2) In S/390 architecture or zSeries z/Architecture™ (and FICON), an eight-bit entity prior to encoding or after decoding, with its least significant bit denoted as bit 7, and most significant bit as bit 0. The

most significant bit is shown on the left side in S/390 architecture and zSeries z/Architecture.

**Cascaded switches** The connecting of one Fibre Channel switch to another Fibre Channel switch, thereby creating a cascaded switch route between two N\_Nodes connected to a fibre channel fabric.

**chained** In an ESCON environment, pertaining to the physical attachment of two ESCON Directors (ESCDs) to each other.

**channel** (1) A processor system element that controls one channel path, whose mode of operation depends on the type of hardware to which it is attached. In a channel subsystem, each channel controls an I/O interface between the channel control element and the logically attached control units. (2) In the ESA/390 or zSeries architecture (z/Architecture), the part of a channel subsystem that manages a single I/O interface between a channel subsystem and a set of controllers (control units).

**channel I/O** A form of I/O where request and response correlation is maintained through some form of source, destination and request identification.

**channel path (CHP)** A single interface between a central processor and one or more control units along which signals and data can be sent to perform I/O requests.

**channel path identifier (CHPID)** In a channel subsystem, a value assigned to each installed channel path of the system that uniquely identifies that path to the system.

**channel subsystem (CSS)** Relieves the processor of direct I/O communication tasks, and performs path management functions. Uses a collection of subchannels to direct a

channel to control the flow of information between I/O devices and main storage.

**channel-attached** (1) Pertaining to attachment of devices directly by data channels (I/O channels) to a computer. (2) Pertaining to devices attached to a controlling unit by cables rather than by telecommunication lines.

**CHPID** Channel path identifier.

**CIFS** Common Internet File System.

**cladding.** In an optical cable, the region of low refractive index surrounding the core. See also *core* and *optical fiber*.

**Class of Service** A Fibre Channel frame delivery scheme exhibiting a specified set of delivery characteristics and attributes.

**Class-1** A class of service providing dedicated connection between two ports with confirmed delivery or notification of non-deliverability.

**Class-2** A class of service providing a frame switching service between two ports with confirmed delivery or notification of non-deliverability.

**Class-3** A class of service providing frame switching datagram service between two ports or a multicast service between a multicast originator and one or more multicast recipients.

**Class-4** A class of service providing a fractional bandwidth virtual circuit between two ports with confirmed delivery or notification of non-deliverability.

**Class-6** A class of service providing a multicast connection between a multicast originator and one or more multicast recipients

with confirmed delivery or notification of non-deliverability.

**Client** A software program used to contact and obtain data from a *server* software program on another computer -- often across a great distance. Each *client* program is designed to work specifically with one or more kinds of server programs and each server requires a specific kind of client program.

**Client/Server** The relationship between machines in a communications network. The client is the requesting machine, the server the supplying machine. Also used to describe the information management relationship between software components in a processing system.

**Cluster** A type of parallel or distributed system that consists of a collection of interconnected whole computers and is used as a single, unified computing resource.

**CNC** Mnemonic for an ESCON channel used to communicate to an ESCON-capable device.

**configuration matrix** In an ESCON environment or FICON, an array of connectivity attributes that appear as rows and columns on a display device and can be used to determine or change active and saved ESCON or FICON director configurations.

**connected** In an ESCON Director, the attribute that, when set, establishes a dedicated connection between two ESCON ports. Contrast with *disconnected*.

**connection** In an ESCON Director, an association established between two ports that provides a physical communication path between them.

**connectivity attribute** In an ESCON and FICON Director, the characteristic that

determines a particular element of a port's status. See *allowed, prohibited, blocked, unblocked, (connected and disconnected)*.

**control unit** A hardware unit that controls the reading, writing, or displaying of data at one or more input/output units.

**Controller** A component that attaches to the system topology through a channel semantic protocol that includes some form of request/response identification.

**core** (1) In an optical cable, the central region of an optical fiber through which light is transmitted. (2) In an optical cable, the central region of an optical fiber that has an index of refraction greater than the surrounding cladding material. See also *cladding* and *optical fiber*.

**coupler** In an ESCON environment, link hardware used to join optical fiber connectors of the same type. Contrast with *adapter*.

**Coaxial Cable** A transmission media (cable) used for high speed transmission. It is called *coaxial* because it includes one physical channel that carries the signal surrounded (after a layer of insulation) by another concentric physical channel, both of which run along the same axis. The inner channel carries the signal and the outer channel serves as a ground.

**CRC** Cyclic Redundancy Check - An error-correcting code used in Fibre Channel.

**CTC** (1) Channel-to-channel. (2) Mnemonic for an ESCON channel attached to another ESCON channel, where one of the two ESCON channels is defined as an ESCON CTC channel and the other ESCON channel would be defined as a ESCON CNC channel (3) Mnemonic for a FICON channel supporting a CTC Control Unit function logically or

physically connected to another FICON channel that also supports a CTC Control Unit function. FICON channels supporting the FICON CTC control unit function are defined as normal FICON native (FC) mode channels.

**CVC** Mnemonic for an ESCON channel attached to an IBM 9034 convertor. The 9034 converts from ESCON CVC signals to parallel channel interface (OEMI) communication operating in block multiplex mode (Bus and Tag). Contrast with *CBY*.

**DASD** Direct Access Storage Device - any online storage device: a disc, drive or CD-ROM.

**DAT** Digital Audio Tape - A tape media technology designed for very high quality audio recording and data backup. DAT cartridges look like audio cassettes and are often used in mechanical auto-loaders. typically, a DAT cartridge provides 2GB of storage. But new DAT systems have much larger capacities.

**Data Sharing** A SAN solution in which files on a storage device are shared between multiple hosts.

**Datagram** Refers to the Class 3 Fibre Channel Service that allows data to be sent rapidly to multiple devices attached to the fabric, with no confirmation of delivery.

**DDM** See *disk drive module*.

**dedicated connection** In an ESCON Director, a connection between two ports that is not affected by information contained in the transmission frames. This connection, which restricts those ports from communicating with any other port, can be established or removed only as a result of actions performed by a host control program or at the ESCD console. Contrast with *dynamic connection*.

Note: The two links having a dedicated connection appear as one continuous link.

**default** Pertaining to an attribute, value, or option that is assumed when none is explicitly specified.

**Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing (DWDM)** The concept of packing multiple signals tightly together in separate groups, and transmitting them simultaneously over a common carrier wave.

**destination** Any point or location, such as a node, station, or a particular terminal, to which information is to be sent. An example is a Fibre Channel fabric F\_Port; when attached to a fibre channel N\_port, communication to the N\_port via the F\_port is said to be to the F\_Port destination identifier (D\_ID).

**device** A mechanical, electrical, or electronic contrivance with a specific purpose.

**device address** (1) In ESA/390 architecture and zSeries z/Architecture, the field of an ESCON device-level frame that selects a specific device on a control unit image. (2) In the FICON channel FC-SB-2 architecture, the device address field in an SB-2 header that is used to select a specific device on a control unit image.

**device number** (1) In ESA/390 and zSeries z/Architecture, a four-hexadecimal character identifier (for example, 19A0) that you associate with a device to facilitate communication between the program and the host operator. (2) The device number that you associate with a subchannel that uniquely identifies an I/O device.

**dB** Decibel - a ratio measurement distinguishing the percentage of signal attenuation between the input and output

power. Attenuation (loss) is expressed as dB/km.

**direct access storage device (DASD)** A mass storage medium on which a computer stores data.

**disconnected** In an ESCON Director, the attribute that, when set, removes a dedicated connection. Contrast with *connected*.

**disk** A mass storage medium on which a computer stores data.

**disk drive module (DDM)** A disk storage medium that you use for any host data that is stored within a disk subsystem.

**Disk Mirroring** A fault-tolerant technique that writes data simultaneously to two hard disks using the same hard disk controller.

**Disk Pooling** A SAN solution in which disk storage resources are pooled across multiple hosts rather than be dedicated to a specific host.

**distribution panel** (1) In an ESCON and FICON environment, a panel that provides a central location for the attachment of trunk and jumper cables and can be mounted in a rack, wiring closet, or on a wall.

**DLT** Digital Linear Tape - A magnetic tape technology originally developed by Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC) and now sold by Quantum. DLT cartridges provide storage capacities from 10 to 35GB.

**duplex** Pertaining to communication in which data or control information can be sent and received at the same time, from the same node. Contrast with *half duplex*.

**duplex connector** In an ESCON environment, an optical fiber component that

terminates both jumper cable fibers in one housing and provides physical keying for attachment to a duplex receptacle.

**duplex receptacle** In an ESCON environment, a fixed or stationary optical fiber component that provides a keyed attachment method for a duplex connector.

**dynamic connection** In an ESCON Director, a connection between two ports, established or removed by the ESCD and that, when active, appears as one continuous link. The duration of the connection depends on the protocol defined for the frames transmitted through the ports and on the state of the ports. Contrast with *dedicated connection*.

**dynamic connectivity** In an ESCON Director, the capability that allows connections to be established and removed at any time.

**Dynamic I/O Reconfiguration** A S/390 and z/Architecture function that allows I/O configuration changes to be made non-disruptively to the current operating I/O configuration.

**ECL** Emitter Coupled Logic - The type of transmitter used to drive copper media such as Twinax, Shielded Twisted Pair, or Coax.

**ELS** See *Extended Link Services*.

**EMIF** See *ESCON Multiple Image Facility*.

**E\_Port** Expansion Port - a port on a switch used to link multiple switches together into a Fibre Channel switch fabric.

**Enterprise Network** A geographically dispersed network under the auspices of one organization.

**Enterprise System Connection (ESCON)** (1) An ESA/390 computer peripheral interface.

The I/O interface uses ESA/390 logical protocols over a serial interface that configures attached units to a communication fabric. (2) A set of IBM products and services that provide a dynamically connected environment within an enterprise.

**Enterprise Systems Architecture/390® (ESA/390)** An IBM architecture for mainframe computers and peripherals. Processors that follow this architecture include the S/390 Server family of processors.

**Entity** In general, a real or existing thing from the Latin *ens*, or being, which makes the distinction between a thing's existence and its qualities. In programming, engineering and probably many other contexts, the word is used to identify units, whether concrete things or abstract ideas, that have no ready name or label.

**ESA/390** See *Enterprise Systems Architecture/390*.

**ESCD** Enterprise Systems Connection (ESCON) Director.

**ESCD console** The ESCON Director display and keyboard device used to perform operator and service tasks at the ESCD.

**ESCON** See *Enterprise System Connection*.

**ESCON channel** A channel having an Enterprise Systems Connection channel-to-control-unit I/O interface that uses optical cables as a transmission medium. May operate in CBY, CNC, CTC or CVC mode. Contrast with *parallel channel*.

**ESCON Director** An I/O interface switch that provides the interconnection capability of multiple ESCON interfaces (or FICON Bridge (FCV) mode - 9032-5) in a distributed-star topology.

**ESCON Multiple Image Facility (EMIF)** In the ESA/390 architecture and zSeries z/Architecture, a function that allows LPARs to share an ESCON and FICON channel path (and other channel types) by providing each LPAR with its own channel-subsystem image.

**Extended Link Services (ELS)** An Extended Link Service (command) request solicits a destination port (N\_Port or F\_Port) to perform a function or service. Each ELS request consists of an Link Service (LS) command; the N\_Port ELS commands are defined in the FC-FS architecture.

**Exchange** A group of sequences which share a unique identifier. All sequences within a given exchange use the same protocol. Frames from multiple sequences can be multiplexed to prevent a single exchange from consuming all the bandwidth. See also *Sequence*.

**F\_Node** Fabric Node - a fabric attached node.

**F\_Port** Fabric Port - a port used to attach a Node Port (N\_Port) to a switch fabric.

**Fabric** Fibre Channel employs a fabric to connect devices. A fabric can be as simple as a single cable connecting two devices. The term is most often used to describe a more complex network utilizing hubs, switches and gateways.

**Fabric Login** Fabric Login (FLOGI) is used by an N\_Port to determine if a fabric is present and, if so, to initiate a session with the fabric by exchanging service parameters with the fabric. Fabric Login is performed by an N\_Port following link initialization and before communication with other N\_Ports is attempted.

**FC (1)** (Fibre Channel), a short form when referring to something that is part of the fibre

channel standard. (2) Also used by the IBM I/O definition process when defining a FICON channel (using IOCP or HCD) that will be used in FICON native mode (using the FC-SB-2 communication protocol).

**FC-FS** Fibre Channel-Framing and Signalling, the term used to describe the FC-FS architecture.

**FC** Fibre Channel.

**FC-0** Lowest level of the Fibre Channel Physical standard, covering the physical characteristics of the interface and media.

**FC-1** Middle level of the Fibre Channel Physical standard, defining the 8b/10b encoding/decoding and transmission protocol.

**FC-2** Highest level of the Fibre Channel Physical standard, defining the rules for signaling protocol and describing transfer of frame, sequence and exchanges.

**FC-3** The hierarchical level in the Fibre Channel standard that provides common services such as striping definition.

**FC-4** The hierarchical level in the Fibre Channel standard that specifies the mapping of upper-layer protocols to levels below.

**FCA** Fibre Channel Association.

**FC-AL** Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop - A reference to the Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop standard, a shared gigabit media for up to 127 nodes, one of which may be attached to a switch fabric. See also *Arbitrated Loop*.

**FC-CT** Fibre Channel common transport protocol.

**FC-FG** Fibre Channel Fabric Generic - A reference to the document (ANSI X3.289-1996) which defines the concepts,

behavior and characteristics of the Fibre Channel Fabric along with suggested partitioning of the 24-bit address space to facilitate the routing of frames.

**FC-FP** Fibre Channel HIPPI Framing Protocol - A reference to the document (ANSI X3.254-1994) defining how the HIPPI framing protocol is transported via the Fibre Channel.

**FC-GS** Fibre Channel Generic Services -A reference to the document (ANSI X3.289-1996) describing a common transport protocol used to communicate with the server functions, a full X500 based directory service, mapping of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) directly to the Fibre Channel, a time server and an alias server.

**FC-LE** Fibre Channel Link Encapsulation - A reference to the document (ANSI X3.287-1996) which defines how IEEE 802.2 Logical Link Control (LLC) information is transported via the Fibre Channel.

**FC-PH** A reference to the Fibre Channel Physical and Signaling standard ANSI X3.230, containing the definition of the three lower levels (FC-0, FC-1, and FC-2) of the Fibre Channel.

**FC-PLDA** Fibre Channel Private Loop Direct Attach - See *PLDA*.

**FC-SB** Fibre Channel Single Byte Command Code Set - A reference to the document (ANSI X.271-1996) which defines how the ESCON command set protocol is transported using the Fibre Channel.

**FC-SW** Fibre Channel Switch Fabric - A reference to the ANSI standard under development that further defines the fabric behavior described in FC-FG and defines the communications between different fabric elements required for those elements to

coordinate their operations and management address assignment.

**FC Storage Director** See *SAN Storage Director*.

**FCA** Fibre Channel Association - a Fibre Channel industry association that works to promote awareness and understanding of the Fibre Channel technology and its application and provides a means for implementers to support the standards committee activities.

**FCLC** Fibre Channel Loop Association - an independent working group of the Fibre Channel Association focused on the marketing aspects of the Fibre Channel Loop technology.

**FCP** Fibre Channel Protocol - the mapping of SCSI-3 operations to Fibre Channel.

**FCS** See *fibre channel standard*.

**fiber** See *optical fiber*.

**fiber optic cable** See *optical cable*.

**fiber optics** The branch of optical technology concerned with the transmission of radiant power through fibers made of transparent materials such as glass, fused silica, and plastic.

**Note:** Telecommunication applications of fiber optics use optical fibers. Either a single discrete fiber or a non-spatially aligned fiber bundle can be used for each information channel. Such fibers are often called “optical fibers” to differentiate them from fibers used in non-communication applications.

**Fibre Channel** A technology for transmitting data between computer devices at a data rate of up to 4 Gbps. It is especially suited for connecting computer servers to shared



storage devices and for interconnecting storage controllers and drives.

**fibre channel standard** An ANSI standard for a computer peripheral interface. The I/O interface defines a protocol for communication over a serial interface that configures attached units to a communication fabric. The protocol has four layers. The lower of the four layers defines the physical media and interface, the upper of the four layers defines one or more Upper Layer Protocols (ULP)—for example, FCP for SCSI command protocols and FC-SB-2 for FICON protocol supported by ESA/390 and z/Architecture. Refer to ANSI X3.230.1999x.

**FICON** (1) An ESA/390 and zSeries computer peripheral interface. The I/O interface uses ESA/390 and zSeries FICON protocols (FC-FS and FC-SB-2) over a Fibre Channel serial interface that configures attached units to a FICON supported Fibre Channel communication fabric. (2) An FC4 proposed standard that defines an effective mechanism for the export of the SBCCS-2 (FC-SB-2) command protocol via fibre channels.

**FICON channel** A channel having a Fibre Channel connection (FICON) channel-to-control-unit I/O interface that uses optical cables as a transmission medium. May operate in either FC or FCV mode.

**FICON Director** A Fibre Channel switch that supports the ESCON-like “control unit port” (CUP function) that is assigned a 24-bit FC port address to allow FC-SB-2 addressing of the CUP function to perform command and data transfer (in the FC world, it is a means of in-band management using a FC-4 ULP).

**field replaceable unit (FRU)** An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its required components fails.

**FL\_Port** Fabric Loop Port - the access point of the fabric for physically connecting the user's Node Loop Port (NL\_Port).

**FLOGI** See *Fabric Log In*.

**Frame** A linear set of transmitted bits that define the basic transport unit. The frame is the most basic element of a message in Fibre Channel communications, consisting of a 24-byte header and zero to 2112 bytes of data. See also *Sequence*.

**FRU** See *field replaceable unit*.

**FSP** Fibre Channel Service Protocol - The common FC-4 level protocol for all services, transparent to the fabric type or topology.

**FSPF** Fabric Shortest Path First - is an intelligent path selection and routing standard and is part of the Fibre Channel Protocol.

**Full-Duplex** A mode of communications allowing simultaneous transmission and reception of frames.

**G\_Port** Generic Port - a generic switch port that is either a Fabric Port (F\_Port) or an Expansion Port (E\_Port). The function is automatically determined during login.

**Gateway** A node on a network that interconnects two otherwise incompatible networks.

**Gb/s** Gigabits per second. Also sometimes referred to as Gbps. In computing terms it is approximately 1,000,000,000 bits per second. Most precisely it is 1,073,741,824 (1024 x 1024 x 1024) bits per second.

**GB/s** Gigabytes per second. Also sometimes referred to as GBps. In computing terms it is approximately 1,000,000,000 bytes per

second. Most precisely it is 1,073,741,824 (1024 x 1024 x 1024) bytes per second.

**GBIC** GigaBit Interface Converter - Industry standard transceivers for connection of Fibre Channel nodes to arbitrated loop hubs and fabric switches.

**Gigabit** One billion bits, or one thousand megabits.

**GLM** Gigabit Link Module - a generic Fibre Channel transceiver unit that integrates the key functions necessary for installation of a Fibre channel media interface on most systems.

**half duplex** In data communication, pertaining to transmission in only one direction at a time. Contrast with *duplex*.

**hard disk drive** (1) A storage media within a storage server used to maintain information that the storage server requires. (2) A mass storage medium for computers that is typically available as a fixed disk or a removable cartridge.

**Hardware** The mechanical, magnetic and electronic components of a system, e.g., computers, telephone switches, terminals and the like.

**HBA** Host Bus Adapter.

**HCD** Hardware Configuration Dialog.

**HDA** Head and disk assembly.

**HDD** See *hard disk drive*.

**head and disk assembly** The portion of an HDD associated with the medium and the read/write head.

**HIPPI** High Performance Parallel Interface - An ANSI standard defining a channel that

transfers data between CPUs and from a CPU to disk arrays and other peripherals.

**HMMP** HyperMedia Management Protocol.

**HMMS** HyperMedia Management Schema - the definition of an implementation-independent, extensible, common data description/schema allowing data from a variety of sources to be described and accessed in real time regardless of the source of the data. See also *WEBM*, *HMMP*.

**hop** A FC frame may travel from a switch to a director, a switch to a switch, or director to a director which, in this case, is one hop.

**HSM** Hierarchical Storage Management - A software and hardware system that moves files from disk to slower, less expensive storage media based on rules and observation of file activity. Modern HSM systems move files from magnetic disk to optical disk to magnetic tape.

**HUB** A Fibre Channel device that connects nodes into a logical loop by using a physical star topology. Hubs will automatically recognize an active node and insert the node into the loop. A node that fails or is powered off is automatically removed from the loop.

**HUB Topology** See *Loop Topology*.

**Hunt Group** A set of associated Node Ports (N\_Ports) attached to a single node, assigned a special identifier that allows any frames containing this identifier to be routed to any available Node Port (N\_Port) in the set.

**ID** See *identifier*.

**identifier** A unique name or address that identifies things such as programs, devices or systems.

**In-band Signaling** This is signaling that is carried in the same channel as the information. Also referred to as in-band.

**In-band virtualization** An implementation in which the virtualization process takes place in the data path between servers and disk systems. The virtualization can be implemented as software running on servers or in dedicated engines.

**Information Unit** A unit of information defined by an FC-4 mapping. Information Units are transferred as a Fibre Channel Sequence.

**initial program load (IPL)** (1) The initialization procedure that causes an operating system to commence operation. (2) The process by which a configuration image is loaded into storage at the beginning of a work day, or after a system malfunction. (3) The process of loading system programs and preparing a system to run jobs.

**input/output (I/O)** (1) Pertaining to a device whose parts can perform an input process and an output process at the same time. (2) Pertaining to a functional unit or channel involved in an input process, output process, or both, concurrently or not, and to the data involved in such a process. (3) Pertaining to input, output, or both.

**input/output configuration data set (IOCDs)** The data set in the S/390 and zSeries processor (in the support element) that contains an I/O configuration definition built by the input/output configuration program (IOCP).

**input/output configuration program (IOCP)** A S/390 program that defines to a system the channels, I/O devices, paths to the I/O devices, and the addresses of the I/O devices. The output is normally written to a S/390 or zSeries IOCDs.

**interface** (1) A shared boundary between two functional units, defined by functional characteristics, signal characteristics, or other characteristics as appropriate. The concept includes the specification of the connection of two devices having different functions. (2) Hardware, software, or both, that links systems, programs, or devices.

**Intermix** A mode of service defined by Fibre Channel that reserves the full Fibre Channel bandwidth for a dedicated Class 1 connection, but also allows connection-less Class 2 traffic to share the link if the bandwidth is available.

**inter-switch link** A FC connection between switches and/or directors. Also known as ISL.

**I/O** See *input/output*.

**I/O configuration** The collection of channel paths, control units, and I/O devices that attaches to the processor. This may also include channel switches (for example, an ESCON Director).

**IOCDs** See *Input/Output configuration data set*.

**IOCP** See *Input/Output configuration control program*.

**IODF** The data set that contains the S/390 or zSeries I/O configuration definition file produced during the defining of the S/390 or zSeries I/O configuration by HCD. Used as a source for IPL, IOCP and Dynamic I/O Reconfiguration.

**IPL** See *initial program load*.

**I/O** Input/output.

**IP** Internet Protocol.

**IPI** Intelligent Peripheral Interface.

**ISL** See *inter-switch link*.

**Isochronous Transmission Data** transmission which supports network-wide timing requirements. A typical application for isochronous transmission is a broadcast environment which needs information to be delivered at a predictable time.

**JBOD** Just a bunch of disks.

**Jukebox** A device that holds multiple optical disks and one or more disk drives, and can swap disks in and out of the drive as needed.

**jumper cable** In an ESCON and FICON environment, an optical cable having two conductors that provides physical attachment between a channel and a distribution panel or an ESCON/FICON Director port or a control unit/device, or between an ESCON/FICON Director port and a distribution panel or a control unit/device, or between a control unit/device and a distribution panel. Contrast with *trunk cable*.

**laser** A device that produces optical radiation using a population inversion to provide *light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation* and (generally) an optical resonant cavity to provide positive feedback. Laser radiation can be highly coherent temporally, or spatially, or both.

**L\_Port** Loop Port - A node or fabric port capable of performing Arbitrated Loop functions and protocols. NL\_Ports and FL\_Ports are loop-capable ports.

**LAN** A network covering a relatively small geographic area (usually not larger than a floor or small building). Transmissions within a Local Area Network are mostly digital, carrying data among stations at rates usually above one megabit/s.

**Latency** A measurement of the time it takes to send a frame between two locations.

**LC** Lucent Connector. A registered trademark of Lucent Technologies.

**LCU** See *Logical Control Unit*.

**LED** See *light emitting diode*.

**licensed internal code (LIC)** Microcode that IBM does not sell as part of a machine, but instead, licenses it to the customer. LIC is implemented in a part of storage that is not addressable by user programs. Some IBM products use it to implement functions as an alternate to hard-wire circuitry.

**light-emitting diode (LED)** A semiconductor chip that gives off visible or infrared light when activated. Contrast with *Laser*.

**link** (1) In an ESCON environment or FICON environment (fibre channel environment), the physical connection and transmission medium used between an optical transmitter and an optical receiver. A link consists of two conductors, one used for sending and the other for receiving, thereby providing a duplex communication path. (2) In an ESCON I/O interface, the physical connection and transmission medium used between a channel and a control unit, a channel and an ESCD, a control unit and an ESCD, or, at times, between two ESCDs. (3) In a FICON I/O interface, the physical connection and transmission medium used between a channel and a control unit, a channel and a FICON Director, a control unit and a fibre channel FICON Director, or, at times, between two fibre channels switches.

**link address** (1) On an ESCON interface, the portion of a source or destination address in a frame that ESCON uses to route a frame through an ESCON director. ESCON

associates the link address with a specific switch port that is on the ESCON director. See also *port address*. (2) On a FICON interface, the port address (1-byte link address), or domain and port address (2-byte link address) portion of a source (S\_ID) or destination address (D\_ID) in a fibre channel frame that the fibre channel switch uses to route a frame through a fibre channel switch or fibre channel switch fabric. See also *port address*.

**Link\_Control\_Facility** A termination card that handles the logical and physical control of the Fibre Channel link for each mode of use.

**LIP** A Loop Initialization Primitive sequence is a special Fibre Channel sequence that is used to start loop initialization. Allows ports to establish their port addresses.

**local area network (LAN)** A computer network located in a user's premises within a limited geographic area.

**logical control unit (LCU)** A separately addressable control unit function within a physical control unit. Usually a physical control unit that supports several LCUs. For ESCON, the maximum number of LCUs that can be in a control unit (and addressed from the same ESCON fiber link) is 16; they are addressed from x'0' to x'F'. For FICON architecture, the maximum number of LCUs that can be in a control unit (and addressed from the same FICON fibre link) is 256; they are addressed from x'00' to x'FF'. For both ESCON and FICON, the actual number supported, and the LCU address value, is both processor- and control unit implementation-dependent.

**logical partition (LPAR)** A set of functions that create a programming environment that is defined by the ESA/390 architecture or zSeries z/Architecture. ESA/390 architecture or zSeries z/Architecture uses the term LPAR when more than one logical partition is

established on a processor. An LPAR is conceptually similar to a virtual machine environment except that the LPAR is a function of the processor. Also, LPAR does not depend on an operating system to create the virtual machine environment.

**logical switch number (LSN)** A two-digit number used by the I/O Configuration Program (IOCP) to identify a specific ESCON or FICON Director. (This number is separate from the director's "switch device number" and, for FICON, it is separate from the director's "FC switch address").

**logically partitioned (LPAR) mode** A central processor mode, available on the Configuration frame when using the PR/SM™ facility, that allows an operator to allocate processor hardware resources among logical partitions. Contrast with *basic mode*.

**Login Server** Entity within the Fibre Channel fabric that receives and responds to login requests.

**Loop Circuit** A temporary point-to-point like path that allows bi-directional communications between loop-capable ports.

**Loop Topology** An interconnection structure in which each point has physical links to two neighbors resulting in a closed circuit. In a loop topology, the available bandwidth is shared.

**LPAR** See *logical partition*.

**LVD** Low Voltage Differential.

**Management Agent** A process that exchanges a managed node's information with a management station.

**Managed Node** A managed node is a computer, a storage system, a gateway, a

media device such as a switch or hub, a control instrument, a software product such as an operating system or an accounting package, or a machine on a factory floor, such as a robot.

**Managed Object** A variable of a managed node. This variable contains one piece of information about the node. Each node can have several objects.

**Management Station** A host system that runs the management software.

**MAR** Media Access Rules. Enable systems to self-configure themselves in a SAN environment.

**Mb/s** Megabits per second. Also sometimes referred to as Mbps. In computing terms it is approximately 1,000,000 bits per second. Most precisely it is 1,048,576 (1024 x 1024) bits per second.

**MB/s** Megabytes per second. Also sometimes referred to as MBps. In computing terms it is approximately 1,000,000 bytes per second. Most precisely it is 1,048,576 (1024 x 1024) bytes per second.

**Metadata server** In Storage Tank™, servers that maintain information ("metadata") about the data files and grant permission for application servers to communicate directly with disk systems.

**Meter** 39.37 inches, or just slightly larger than a yard (36 inches).

**Media** Plural of medium. The physical environment through which transmission signals pass. Common media include copper and fiber optic cable.

**Media Access Rules (MAR).**

**MIA** Media Interface Adapter - MIAs enable optic-based adapters to interface to copper-based devices, including adapters, hubs, and switches.

**MIB** Management Information Block - A formal description of a set of network objects that can be managed using the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). The format of the MIB is defined as part of SNMP and is a hierarchical structure of information relevant to a specific device, defined in object oriented terminology as a collection of objects, relations, and operations among objects.

**Mirroring** The process of writing data to two separate physical devices simultaneously.

**MM** Multi-Mode - See *Multi-Mode Fiber*.

**MMF** See *Multi-Mode Fiber* - In optical fiber technology, an optical fiber that is designed to carry multiple light rays or modes concurrently, each at a slightly different reflection angle within the optical core. Multi-Mode fiber transmission is used for relatively short distances because the modes tend to disperse over longer distances. See also *Single-Mode Fiber, SMF*.

**Multicast** Sending a copy of the same transmission from a single source device to multiple destination devices on a fabric. This includes sending to all N\_Ports on a fabric (broadcast) or to only a subset of the N\_Ports on a fabric (multicast).

**Multi-Mode Fiber (MMF)** In optical fiber technology, an optical fiber that is designed to carry multiple light rays or modes concurrently, each at a slightly different reflection angle within the optical core. Multi-Mode fiber transmission is used for relatively short distances because the modes tend to disperse over longer distances. See also *Single-Mode Fiber*.

**Multiplex** The ability to intersperse data from multiple sources and destinations onto a single transmission medium. Refers to delivering a single transmission to multiple destination Node Ports (N\_Ports).

**N\_Port** Node Port - A Fibre Channel-defined hardware entity at the end of a link which provides the mechanisms necessary to transport information units to or from another node.

**N\_Port Login** N\_Port Login (PLOGI) allows two N\_Ports to establish a session and exchange identities and service parameters. It is performed following completion of the fabric login process and prior to the FC-4 level operations with the destination port. N\_Port Login may be either explicit or implicit.

**Name Server** Provides translation from a given node name to one or more associated N\_Port identifiers.

**NAS** Network Attached Storage - a term used to describe a technology where an integrated storage system is attached to a messaging network that uses common communications protocols, such as TCP/IP.

**ND** See *node descriptor*.

**NDMP** Network Data Management Protocol.

**NED** See *node-element descriptor*.

**Network** An aggregation of interconnected nodes, workstations, file servers, and/or peripherals, with its own protocol that supports interaction.

**Network Topology** Physical arrangement of nodes and interconnecting communications links in networks based on application requirements and geographical distribution of users.

**NFS** Network File System - A distributed file system in UNIX developed by Sun Microsystems which allows a set of computers to cooperatively access each other's files in a transparent manner.

**NL\_Port** Node Loop Port - a node port that supports Arbitrated Loop devices.

**NMS** Network Management System - A system responsible for managing at least part of a network. NMSs communicate with agents to help keep track of network statistics and resources.

**Node** An entity with one or more N\_Ports or NL\_Ports.

**node descriptor** In an ESCON and FICON environment, a node descriptor (ND) is a 32-byte field that describes a node, channel, ESCON Director port or a FICON Director port, or a control unit.

**node-element descriptor** In an ESCON and FICON environment, a node-element descriptor (NED) is a 32-byte field that describes a node element, such as a disk (DASD) device.

**Non-Blocking** A term used to indicate that the capabilities of a switch are such that the total number of available transmission paths is equal to the number of ports. Therefore, all ports can have simultaneous access through the switch.

**Non-L\_Port** A Node or Fabric port that is not capable of performing the Arbitrated Loop functions and protocols. N\_Ports and F\_Ports are not loop-capable ports.

**OEMI** See *original equipment manufacturers information*.

**open system** A system whose characteristics comply with standards made available throughout the industry and that therefore can be connected to other systems complying with the same standards.

**Operation** A term defined in FC-2 that refers to one of the Fibre Channel *building blocks* composed of one or more, possibly concurrent, exchanges.

**optical cable** A fiber, multiple fibers, or a fiber bundle in a structure built to meet optical, mechanical, and environmental specifications. See also *jumper cable*, *optical cable assembly*, and *trunk cable*.

**optical cable assembly** An optical cable that is connector-terminated. Generally, an optical cable that has been connector-terminated by a manufacturer and is ready for installation. See also *jumper cable* and *optical cable*.

**optical fiber** Any filament made of dielectric materials that guides light, regardless of its ability to send signals. See also *fiber optics* and *optical waveguide*.

**optical fiber connector** A hardware component that transfers optical power between two optical fibers or bundles and is designed to be repeatedly connected and disconnected.

**optical waveguide** (1) A structure capable of guiding optical power. (2) In optical communications, generally a fiber designed to transmit optical signals. See *optical fiber*.

**Ordered Set** A Fibre Channel term referring to four 10-bit characters (a combination of data and special characters) providing low-level link functions, such as frame demarcation and signaling between two ends of a link.

**original equipment manufacturer information (OEMI)** A reference to an IBM guideline for a computer peripheral interface. More specifically, it refers to IBM S/360™ and S/370™ Channel to Control Unit Original Equipment Manufacturer Information. The interface uses ESA/390 logical protocols over an I/O interface that configures attached units in a multi-drop bus environment. This OEMI interface is also supported by the zSeries 900 processors.

**Originator** A Fibre Channel term referring to the initiating device.

**Out of Band Signaling** This is signaling that is separated from the channel carrying the information. Also referred to as out-of-band.

**Out-of-band virtualization** An alternative type of virtualization in which servers communicate directly with disk systems under control of a virtualization function that is not involved in the data transfer.

**parallel channel** A channel having a System/360™ and System/370™ channel-to-control-unit I/O interface that uses bus and tag cables as a transmission medium. Contrast with *ESCON channel*.

**path** In a channel or communication network, any route between any two nodes. For ESCON and FICON this would be the route between the channel and the control unit/device, or sometimes from the operating system control block for the device and the device itself.

**path group** The ESA/390 and zSeries architecture (z/Architecture) term for a set of channel paths that are defined to a controller as being associated with a single S/390 image. The channel paths are in a group state and are on-line to the host.



**path-group identifier** The ESA/390 and zSeries architecture (z/Architecture) term for the identifier that uniquely identifies a given LPAR. The path-group identifier is used in communication between the system image program and a device. The identifier associates the path-group with one or more channel paths, thereby defining these paths to the control unit as being associated with the same system image.

**Peripheral** Any computer device that is not part of the essential computer (the processor, memory and data paths) but is situated relatively close by. A near synonym is input/output (I/O) device.

**Petard** A device that is small and sometimes explosive.

**PLDA** Private Loop Direct Attach - A technical report which defines a subset of the relevant standards suitable for the operation of peripheral devices such as disks and tapes on a private loop.

**PCICC** (IBM) PCI Cryptographic Coprocessor.

**PLOGI** See *N\_Port Login*.

**Point-to-Point Topology** An interconnection structure in which each point has physical links to only one neighbor resulting in a closed circuit. In point-to-point topology, the available bandwidth is dedicated.

**Policy-based management** Management of data on the basis of business policies (for example, "all production database data must be backed up every day"), rather than technological considerations (for example, "all data stored on this disk system is protected by remote copy").

**port** (1) An access point for data entry or exit. (2) A receptacle on a device to which a cable

for another device is attached. (3) See also *duplex receptacle*.

**port address** (1) In an ESCON Director, an address used to specify port connectivity parameters and to assign link addresses for attached channels and control units. See also *link address*. (2) In a FICON director or Fibre Channel switch, it is the middle 8 bits of the full 24-bit FC port address. This field is also referred to as the "area field" in the 24-bit FC port address. See also *link address*.

**Port Bypass Circuit** A circuit used in hubs and disk enclosures to automatically open or close the loop to add or remove nodes on the loop.

**port card** In an ESCON and FICON environment, a field-replaceable hardware component that provides the optomechanical attachment method for jumper cables and performs specific device-dependent logic functions.

**port name** In an ESCON or FICON Director, a user-defined symbolic name of 24 characters or less that identifies a particular port.

**Private NL\_Port** An NL\_Port which does not attempt login with the fabric and only communicates with other NL Ports on the same loop.

**processor complex** A system configuration that consists of all the machines required for operation; for example, a processor unit, a processor controller, a system display, a service support display, and a power and coolant distribution unit.

**program temporary fix (PTF)** A temporary solution or bypass of a problem diagnosed by IBM in a current unaltered release of a program.

**prohibited** In an ESCON or FICON Director, the attribute that, when set, removes dynamic connectivity capability. Contrast with *allowed*.

**protocol** (1) A set of semantic and syntactic rules that determines the behavior of functional units in achieving communication. (2) In fibre channel, the meanings of and the sequencing rules for requests and responses used for managing the switch or switch fabric, transferring data, and synchronizing the states of fibre channel fabric components. (3) A specification for the format and relative timing of information exchanged between communicating parties.

**PTF** See *program temporary fix*.

**Public NL\_Port** An NL\_Port that attempts login with the fabric and can observe the rules of either public or private loop behavior. A public NL\_Port may communicate with both private and public NL\_Ports.

**Quality of Service (QoS)** A set of communications characteristics required by an application. Each QoS defines a specific transmission priority, level of route reliability, and security level.

**Quick Loop** is a unique fibre-channel topology that combines arbitrated loop and fabric topologies. It is an optional licensed product that allows arbitrated loops with private devices to be attached to a fabric.

**RAID** Redundant Array of Inexpensive or Independent Disks. A method of configuring multiple disk drives in a storage subsystem for high availability and high performance.

**Raid 0** Level 0 RAID support - Striping, no redundancy.

**Raid 1** Level 1 RAID support - mirroring, complete redundancy.

**Raid 5** Level 5 RAID support, Striping with parity.

**Repeater** A device that receives a signal on an electromagnetic or optical transmission medium, amplifies the signal, and then retransmits it along the next leg of the medium.

**Responder** A Fibre Channel term referring to the answering device.

**route** The path that an ESCON frame takes from a channel through an ESCD to a control unit/device.

**Router** (1) A device that can decide which of several paths network traffic will follow based on some optimal metric. Routers forward packets from one network to another based on network-layer information. (2) A dedicated computer hardware and/or software package which manages the connection between two or more networks. See also *Bridge*, *Bridge/Router*.

**SAF-TE** SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosures.

**SAN** A storage area network (SAN) is a dedicated, centrally managed, secure information infrastructure, which enables any-to-any interconnection of servers and storage systems.

**SAN** System Area Network - term originally used to describe a particular symmetric multiprocessing (SMP) architecture in which a switched interconnect is used in place of a shared bus. Server Area Network - refers to a switched interconnect between multiple SMPs.

**SANSymphony** In-band block-level virtualization software made by DataCore Software Corporation and resold by IBM.

**saved configuration** In an ESCON or FICON Director environment, a stored set of connectivity attributes whose values determine a configuration that can be used to replace all or part of the ESCD's or FICON's active configuration. Contrast with *active configuration*.

**SC Connector** A fiber optic connector standardized by ANSI TIA/EIA-568A for use in structured wiring installations.

**Scalability** The ability of a computer application or product (hardware or software) to continue to function well as it (or its context) is changed in size or volume. For example, the ability to retain performance levels when adding additional processors, memory and/or storage.

**SCSI** Small Computer System Interface - A set of evolving ANSI standard electronic interfaces that allow personal computers to communicate with peripheral hardware such as disk drives, tape drives, CD\_ROM drives, printers and scanners faster and more flexibly than previous interfaces. The table below identifies the major characteristics of the different SCSI version.

| SCSI Version     | Signal Rate MHz | BusWidth (bits) | Max. DTR (MBps) | Max. Num. Devices | Max. Cable Length (m) |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| SCSI-1           | 5               | 8               | 5               | 7                 | 6                     |
| SCSI-2           | 5               | 8               | 5               | 7                 | 6                     |
| Wide SCSI-2      | 5               | 16              | 10              | 15                | 6                     |
| Fast SCSI-2      | 10              | 8               | 10              | 7                 | 6                     |
| Fast Wide SCSI-2 | 10              | 16              | 20              | 15                | 6                     |

|                 |    |    |    |    |     |
|-----------------|----|----|----|----|-----|
| Ultra SCSI      | 20 | 8  | 20 | 7  | 1.5 |
| Ultra SCSI-2    | 20 | 16 | 40 | 7  | 12  |
| Ultra2 LVD SCSI | 40 | 16 | 80 | 15 | 12  |

**SCSI-3** SCSI-3 consists of a set of primary commands and additional specialized command sets to meet the needs of specific device types. The SCSI-3 command sets are used not only for the SCSI-3 parallel interface but for additional parallel and serial protocols, including Fibre Channel, Serial Bus Protocol (used with IEEE 1394 Firewire physical protocol) and the Serial Storage Protocol (SSP).

**SCSI-FCP** The term used to refer to the ANSI Fibre Channel Protocol for SCSI document (X3.269-199x) that describes the FC-4 protocol mappings and the definition of how the SCSI protocol and command set are transported using a Fibre Channel interface.

**Sequence** A series of frames strung together in numbered order which can be transmitted over a Fibre Channel connection as a single operation. See also *Exchange*.

**service element (SE)** A dedicated service processing unit used to service a S/390 machine (processor).

**SERDES** Serializer Deserializer.

**Server** A computer which is dedicated to one task.

**SES** SCSI Enclosure Services - ANSI SCSI-3 proposal that defines a command set for soliciting basic device status (temperature, fan speed, power supply status, etc.) from a storage enclosures.

**Single-Mode Fiber** In optical fiber technology, an optical fiber that is designed for the transmission of a single ray or mode of light as a carrier. It is a single light path used for long-distance signal transmission. See also *Multi-Mode Fiber*.

**Small Computer System Interface (SCSI)**

(1) An ANSI standard for a logical interface to computer peripherals and for a computer peripheral interface. The interface uses an SCSI logical protocol over an I/O interface that configures attached targets and initiators in a multi-drop bus topology. (2) A standard hardware interface that enables a variety of peripheral devices to communicate with one another.

**SMART** Self Monitoring and Reporting Technology.

**SM** Single Mode - See *Single-Mode Fiber*.

**SMF** Single-Mode Fiber - In optical fiber technology, an optical fiber that is designed for the transmission of a single ray or mode of light as a carrier. It is a single light path used for long-distance signal transmission. See *MMF*.

**SNIA** Storage Networking Industry Association. A non-profit organization comprised of more than 77 companies and individuals in the storage industry.

**SN** Storage Network. Also see *SAN*.

**SNMP** Simple Network Management Protocol - The Internet network management protocol which provides a means to monitor and set network configuration and run-time parameters.

**SNMWG** Storage Network Management Working Group is chartered to identify, define and support open standards needed to

address the increased management requirements imposed by storage area network environments.

**SSA** Serial Storage Architecture - A high speed serial loop-based interface developed as a high speed point-to-point connection for peripherals, particularly high speed storage arrays, RAID and CD-ROM storage by IBM.

**Star** The physical configuration used with hubs in which each user is connected by communications links radiating out of a central hub that handles all communications.

**Storage Tank** An IBM file aggregation project that enables a pool of storage, and even individual files, to be shared by servers of different types. In this way, Storage Tank can greatly improve storage utilization and enables data sharing.

**StorWatch Expert** These are StorWatch applications that employ a 3 tiered architecture that includes a management interface, a StorWatch manager and agents that run on the storage resource(s) being managed. Expert products employ a StorWatch data base that can be used for saving key management data (e.g. capacity or performance metrics). Expert products use the agents as well as analysis of storage data saved in the data base to perform higher value functions including -- reporting of capacity, performance, etc. over time (trends), configuration of multiple devices based on policies, monitoring of capacity and performance, automated responses to events or conditions, and storage related data mining.

**StorWatch Specialist** A StorWatch interface for managing an individual fibre Channel device or a limited number of like devices (that can be viewed as a single group). StorWatch specialists typically provide simple, point-in-time management functions such as

configuration, reporting on asset and status information, simple device and event monitoring, and perhaps some service utilities.

**Striping** A method for achieving higher bandwidth using multiple N\_Ports in parallel to transmit a single information unit across multiple levels.

**STP** Shielded Twisted Pair.

**Storage Media** The physical device itself, onto which data is recorded. Magnetic tape, optical disks, floppy disks are all storage media.

**subchannel** A logical function of a channel subsystem associated with the management of a single device.

**subsystem** (1) A secondary or subordinate system, or programming support, usually capable of operating independently or asynchronously with a controlling system.

**SWCH** In ESCON Manager, the mnemonic used to represent an ESCON Director.

**Switch** A component with multiple entry/exit points (ports) that provides dynamic connection between any two of these points.

**Switch Topology** An interconnection structure in which any entry point can be dynamically connected to any exit point. In a switch topology, the available bandwidth is scalable.

**T11** A technical committee of the National Committee for Information Technology Standards, titled T11 I/O Interfaces. It is tasked with developing standards for moving data in and out of computers.

**Tape Backup** Making magnetic tape copies of hard disk and optical disc files for disaster recovery.

**Tape Pooling** A SAN solution in which tape resources are pooled and shared across multiple hosts rather than being dedicated to a specific host.

**TCP** Transmission Control Protocol - a reliable, full duplex, connection-oriented end-to-end transport protocol running on top of IP.

**TCP/IP** Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol - a set of communications protocols that support peer-to-peer connectivity functions for both local and wide area networks.

**Time Server** A Fibre Channel-defined service function that allows for the management of all timers used within a Fibre Channel system.

**Topology** An interconnection scheme that allows multiple Fibre Channel ports to communicate. For example, point-to-point, Arbitrated Loop, and switched fabric are all Fibre Channel topologies.

**T\_Port** An ISL port more commonly known as an E\_Port, referred to as a Trunk port and used by INRANGE.

**TL\_Port** A private to public bridging of switches or directors, referred to as Translative Loop.

**trunk cable** In an ESCON and FICON environment, a cable consisting of multiple fiber pairs that do not directly attach to an active device. This cable usually exists between distribution panels (or sometimes between a set processor channels and a distribution panel) and can be located within,

or external to, a building. Contrast with *jumper cable*.

**Twinax** A transmission media (cable) consisting of two insulated central conducting leads of coaxial cable.

**Twisted Pair** A transmission media (cable) consisting of two insulated copper wires twisted around each other to reduce the induction (thus interference) from one wire to another. The twists, or lays, are varied in length to reduce the potential for signal interference between pairs. Several sets of twisted pair wires may be enclosed in a single cable. This is the most common type of transmission media.

**ULP** Upper Level Protocols.

**unblocked** In an ESCON and FICON Director, the attribute that, when set, establishes communication capability for a specific port. Contrast with *blocked*.

**unit address** The ESA/390 and zSeries term for the address associated with a device on a given controller. On ESCON and FICON interfaces, the unit address is the same as the device address. On OEMI interfaces, the unit address specifies a controller and device pair on the interface.

**UTC** Under-The-Covers, a term used to characterize a subsystem in which a small number of hard drives are mounted inside a higher function unit. The power and cooling are obtained from the system unit. Connection is by parallel copper ribbon cable or pluggable backplane, using IDE or SCSI protocols.

**UTP** Unshielded Twisted Pair.

**Virtual Circuit** A unidirectional path between two communicating N\_Ports that permits fractional bandwidth.

**Virtualization** An abstraction of storage where the representation of a storage unit to the operating system and applications on a server is divorced from the actual physical storage where the information is contained.

**Virtualization engine** Dedicated hardware and software that is used to implement virtualization.

**WAN** Wide Area Network - A network which encompasses inter-connectivity between devices over a wide geographic area. A wide area network may be privately owned or rented, but the term usually connotes the inclusion of public (shared) networks.

**WDM** Wave® Division Multiplexing - A technology that puts data from different sources together on an optical fiber, with each signal carried on its own separate light wavelength. Using WDM, up to 80 (and theoretically more) separate wavelengths or channels of data can be multiplexed into a stream of light transmitted on a single optical fiber.

**WEBM** Web-Based Enterprise Management - A consortium working on the development of a series of standards to enable active management and monitoring of network-based elements.

**Zoning** In Fibre Channel environments, the grouping together of multiple ports to form a virtual private storage network. Ports that are members of a group or zone can communicate with each other but are isolated from ports in other zones.

**z/Architecture** An IBM architecture for mainframe computers and peripherals. Processors that follow this architecture include the zSeries family of processors.

**zSeries** A family of IBM mainframe servers that support high performance, availability, connectivity, security and integrity.





# Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this redbook.

## IBM Redbooks

- ▶ *IBM TotalStorage: SAN Product, Design, and Optimization Guide*, SG24-6384
- ▶ *IBM TotalStorage SAN Volume Controller*, SG24-6423
- ▶ *Implementing an Open IBM SAN*, SG24-6116
- ▶ *Implementing the Cisco MDS 9000 in an InterMix FCP, FCIP, and FICON Environment*, SG24-6397
- ▶ *Introduction to SAN Distance Solutions*, SG24-6408
- ▶ *Introducing Hosts to the SAN fabric*, SG24-6411
- ▶ *IP Storage Networking: IBM NAS and iSCSI Solutions*, SG24-6240
- ▶ *The IBM TotalStorage NAS 200 and 300 Integration Guide*, SG24-6505
- ▶ *Implementing the IBM TotalStorage NAS 300G: High Speed Cross Platform Storage and Tivoli SANergy!*, SG24-6278
- ▶ *iSCSI Performance Testing & Tuning*, SG24-6531
- ▶ *Using iSCSI Solutions' Planning and Implementation*, SG24-6291
- ▶ *IBM Storage Solutions for Server Consolidation*, SG24-5355
- ▶ *Implementing the Enterprise Storage Server in Your Environment*, SG24-5420
- ▶ *Implementing Linux with IBM Disk Storage*, SG24-6261
- ▶ *Storage Area Networks: Tape Future In Fabrics*, SG24-5474
- ▶ *IBM Enterprise Storage Server*, SG24-5465
- ▶ *The IBM TotalStorage Solutions Handbook*, SG24-5250

## Referenced Web sites

These Web sites are also relevant as further information sources:

- ▶ IBM TotalStorage hardware, software and solutions:

<http://www.storage.ibm.com>

- ▶ IBM TotalStorage Storage Networking:

<http://www.storage.ibm.com/snetwork/index.html>

- ▶ Brocade:

<http://www.brocade.com>

- ▶ Cisco:

<http://www.cisco.com>

- ▶ CNT:

<http://www.inrange.com>

- ▶ McDATA:

<http://www.mcdata.com>

- ▶ QLogic:

<http://www.qlogic.com>

- ▶ Emulex:

<http://www.emulex.com>

- ▶ Finisar:

<http://www.finisar.co>

- ▶ Veritas:

<http://www.veritas.co>

- ▶ Tivoli:

<http://www.tivoli.com>

- ▶ JNI:

<http://www.Jni.com>

- ▶ IEEE:

<http://www.ieee.org>

- ▶ Storage Networking Industry Association:

<http://www.snia.org>

- ▶ Fibre Channel Industry Association:

<http://www.fibrechannel.com>

- ▶ SCSI Trade Association:  
<http://www.scsita.org>
- ▶ Internet Engineering Task Force:  
<http://www.ietf.org>
- ▶ American National Standards Institute:  
<http://www.ansi.org>
- ▶ Technical Committee T10:  
<http://www.t10.org>
- ▶ Technical Committee T11:  
<http://www.t11.org>
- ▶ zSeries FICON connectivity:  
<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/connectivity/>
- ▶ iSeries TotalStorage products:  
[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products\\_iseries.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/product/products_iseries.html)
- ▶ iSeries SAN:  
<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/series/hardware/storage/san.html>
- ▶ IBM TotalStorage DS Series portfolio:  
<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/index.html>
- ▶ IBM Network Attached Storage (NAS) portfolio:  
<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/storage/nas/index.html>

## How to get IBM Redbooks

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks, Redpapers, Hints and Tips, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks or CD-ROMs, at this Web site:

[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

## Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads

[ibm.com/support](http://ibm.com/support)

IBM Global Services

[ibm.com/services](http://ibm.com/services)

# Index

## Numerics

- 2005-B32 129
  - 2005-H08 123
  - 2005-H16 126
  - 2006-L10 122
  - 2026-224 130
  - 2026-E12 125
  - 2027-140 138
  - 2027-232 131
  - 2027-256 141
  - 2027-C40 140
  - 2027-R16 152
  - 2045-N16 145
  - 2061-020 132
  - 2061-040 132
  - 2062-D04 142
  - 2062-D07 144
  - 2109-A16 151
  - 2109-F32 128
  - 2109-M14 135
  - 24x7 18, 204
  - 3494 58–59
  - 3580 53
  - 3581 46
  - 3581 Tape Autoloader 46
  - 3582 47
  - 3582 Tape Library 47
  - 3583 Tape Library 48
  - 3590 53
  - 3592 51
  - 3594 58
  - 3DES 179
  - 50 micron 85
  - 500 68
  - 550 54
  - 62.5 micron 85
  - 7206 55
  - 7207 56
  - 7208 57
  - 7212 49
  - 7212 Storage Device Enclosure 49
  - 7332 50
  - 7332 4mm DDS Tape Cartridge Autoloader 50
  - 8b/10b 117
  - 9 pin 84
  - 9216A 133
  - 9216i 133
  - 9509 144
- ## A
- abstraction 20
  - abstractions 60
  - acceptance 211
  - access 213
  - access control 176
  - access control lists 175
  - Access control security 175
  - access list 183
  - accident 176
  - Accountability 182
  - Acknowledged
    - Connection 15
    - Connectionless 15
  - ACL 175
  - adapter card 8
  - added value 187
  - address conflicts 117
  - address translation 31
  - addressing scheme 216
  - adoption 213
  - advanced copy 65
  - Advanced Encryption Standard 179–180
  - advanced storage functions 8
  - AES 179–180
  - affordable 126
  - AFS 27, 29
  - agent code 161
  - agent manager 161
  - AIX 27, 29, 199–200, 202–203
  - AL\_PA 117
  - aliases 108
  - alliances 212
  - Almaden Research Center 66
  - alternate pathing 19
  - American National Standards Institute 211, 215
  - ANSI 182, 211–212, 215

- any-to-any 19
- API 211
- APIs 158
- application
  - availability 7
  - performance 7
- Application Program Interface 158
- application programming interfaces 211
- arbitrated loop 14, 73
- arbitration 76
- arbitration protocol 76
- architecture development organizations 212
- architectures 7
- arrays 6
- AS/400 30–31
- ASCII 27, 202
- Asymmetric 178
- asymmetric 63
- asymmetric encryption 178
- Asynchronous 19
- ATM 168
- attacker 181
- Authentication 177
- authentication 161, 175, 179
- authentication database 181
- Authentication mechanisms 181
- authority 185
- Authorization 18, 177
- authorization 161, 175–176
- authorization database 181
- authorized 175
- auto-discovery 213
- autoloaders 46, 50
- Automation 25
- autonomic 25
- availability 18–19, 25

## B

- backplane 133
- backup 19
- bandwidth 73, 89, 203, 205
- BER 110
- best in class 19
- between 213
- BI 4
- bind 183
- bit error rate 110
- BladeCenter 32–33

- block data 10
- Block virtualization 61
- block-based protocols 68
- blocks traffic 184
- bodies 211
- bottlenecks 6
- bridge 73, 189
- bridging 237
- Brocade 122
- building blocks 9, 188
- bus 6, 8, 17
- Bus and Tag 28, 73
- business
  - benefits 189
  - model 16
  - objectives 16
- Business continuance 5, 19
- business continuance 133, 198
- business recovery procedures 25
- byte-encoding scheme 110

## C

- cable 166
- caching 8
- Cascading 87
- cascading 87
- CDR 110
- centralization 17
- Centralized point of control 65
- centralized storage management tools 25
- certificate exchange 183
- certification process 213
- certify 20
- Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol 181
- CHAP 181
- choice 211
- CIM 154–155, 166, 211, 216
- CIM Object Manager 154–156
- CIM objects 154
- CIM-enabled 155
- CIMOM 154, 156
- cipher text 178
- Cisco 122
- Cisco MDS 9216 Multilayer Fabric Switch 133
- Cisco MDS 9216A Multilayer Fabric Switch 133
- Cisco MDS 9216i Multilayer Fabric Switch 133
- Cisco MDS 9506 Multilayer Director 142
- Cisco MDS 9509 Multilayer Director 144

- cladding 85
- Class 1 15
- Class 2 15
- Class 3 15
- Class 4 15
- Class 6 15
- clear text 180
- CLI 155
- Client/Server 1, 24
- client/server 3
- clock 109
- clock and data recovery 110
- clocking circuitry 113
- clustered servers 6
- clusters and sectors 26
- CNT 122, 168
- CNT Ultranet Replication Appliance 149
- combination 20
- combines 32
- Comma characters 112
- command line interface 155
- COMmodity PArts Storage System 66
- common agent 161
- Common Information Model 154, 211
- common information models 216
- common protocol 154
- company asset 1
- Compass architecture 66
- compatibility 134
- competent 175
- composite view 25
- conception 18
- Concurrent download 172
- configuration 155
- congestion 10
- congestion control 119
- connection authentication 181
- connectivity 17
- consistent access 25
- consolidated storage 7, 26
- Consolidation 25
- consolidation 196
- consolidation movement 26
- consortium 212
- continuous availability 155
- control 168
- control flow 63–64
- control unit 8
- copper 12

- copy services 66
- corrupted 176
- cross-platform 20
- crosstalk 84
- cryptographic 179–180
- cryptographic authentication 183
- cryptographic techniques 184

## D

- dangerous 184
- data 63, 172
  - consistency 204
  - consolidation 25
  - encoding 27
  - protection 23
  - sharing 19, 198
- Data confidentiality 177
- data encryption 179
- Data Encryption Standard 179
- data error 119
- data flow 64
- data formats 3
- Data integrity 177
- data integrity 28, 176
- data path 63
- Data Path Optimizer 172
- Data security 176
- data sharing 66
- data throughput 7
- Data Warehouse 4
- database software 3
- dataflow 19
- DB9 84
- deciding factor 153
- decrypt 178
- decrypt information 178
- defacto standards 211
- defense 175
- demand 7
- Department of Defense 179
- dependency 23
- DES 179
- DES algorithm 179
- destroyed 176
- DH-CHAP 181
- different vendors 20
- digital certificate 179
- director 144

- directors 6, 73
- disaster 19
- disaster recovery 133
- discovery 160
- disk pooling 198
- disparate storage systems 62
- disparity 117
- disposal 18
- distance 8–9, 191, 195
- distances 8
- Distributed Management Task Force 154, 216
- DLT 48
- DMI 166
- DMTF 154, 216
- DNS spoofing 181
- domain IDs 95
- domain manager 63
- downsizing 17
- downtime 195, 204
- DPO 172
- driver 183
- DS Storage Manager 163
- DS300 32
- DS400 32–33
- DS4000 32, 35
- DS4000 EXP100 35–36
- DS4100 34, 36
- DS4300 37
- DS4400 39
- DS4500 40
- DS6000 32, 42
- DS8000 32, 43
- dual copy 8
- dynamic pathing 172

## E

- EBCDIC 27, 202
- e-business 4, 16
- ECKD 26
- EFCM 169
- efficiency 25
- electromagnetic interference 84
- electro-magnetic radiation 84
- eliminates 5
- EMI 84
- Emulex 122, 168
- enablers 12
- Enhanced Journal File System 29

- encoder 110
- encoding 14, 202
- encrypt 178
- encrypt information 178
- encrypted management protocols 185
- encrypted tunnel 184
- encrypting algorithm 180
- Encryption 178
- encryption 178
- encryption terminology 179
- endians 27
- end-to-end support 122
- Enterprise 164
- Enterprise disk systems 41
- Enterprise Fabric Connectivity Manager 169
- Enterprise Storage Server 44
- enterprise systems level 166
- Entry SAN Switches 122
- Entry-level disk systems 32
- EOF 117
- ERP 4
- escalating costs 25
- ESCON 8, 23, 26, 28, 168, 191
- ESCON Director 28
- ESS 44, 164
- ESS Model 750 44
- ESS Model 800 44
- Ethernet 9, 74
- evolution 11, 214
- evolution of storage 24
- exabytes 31
- exchanging keys 178
- expansion 176
- extension 6

## F

- F32 128
- fabric 74, 189, 196
- fabric access 177
- fabric complexity 177
- fabric level 62
- facilitate data integration 26
- failover 6
- Fail-over recovery 171
- fault isolation 172
- FC 8
- FC-0 14
- FC-1 14



- FC-2 14
- FC-3 14
- FC-4 14
- FC-AL 23, 29, 76
- FCAP 183
- FC-FC 151, 198
- FCIA 211–213
- FCIP 10, 92, 118, 133, 151, 168, 196
- FCIP tunneling 133
- FCP 9, 12, 14, 16, 23, 74, 92
- FCPAP 181
- FCSec 181
- FC-SP 177
- FC-SW 77
- FDDI 74
- fence 176
- fiber 12
- fiber-optic cable 8
- Fibre Alliance 212
- Fibre Channel 8, 12–14, 16–17, 19, 73–74, 191, 204
  - point-to-point 75
- Fibre Channel analyzer 173
- Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop 76
- Fibre Channel architecture 12
- Fibre Channel Authentication Protocol 183
- Fibre Channel Industry Association 211, 213
- Fibre Channel over IP 10, 118, 133
- Fibre Channel security 177
- Fibre Channel standard 12
- Fibre Channel Switched Fabric 77
- Fibre Channel tunneling 118
- FICON 8, 12, 14, 16, 23, 26, 28, 74, 95, 168
- file
  - server 9
- file system level 62
- file systems 3
- filter 184
- firewall 184
- Firewalls 184
- flexibility 5
- FlexPort 125
- floating point 27
- flow control 14
- foundation 23
- Fractional Bandwidth Connection 15
- frame level encryption 181
- frame switch 14
- framing protocol 14

- freeing personnel 26
- frequencies of light waves 85
- FSPF 89
- full duplex 8
- full duplex protocol 75

## G

- gateway 6, 74, 166, 189
- gateways 5
- gateway-to-gateway protocol 10
- GB 7
- Gb 7
- ge 7
- generic services 214
- geographically 21
- geographically dispersed 10, 134
- geographically dispersed SANs 118
- gigabit 7
- gigabyte 7
- global namespace 67
- graphical user interface 155
- growth of data 23
- guarding 177
- GUI 155

## H

- H08 123
- H16 126
- hardware enforced 182
- hash 180
- HBA 166
- heterogeneous 5, 18, 20, 25–26, 65, 166, 192, 198, 201–202
- heterogeneous file sharing 67
- high availability 172
- high speed network 5
- hijack 181
- homogeneous 201
- hop 87
- host-centric 1, 3
- HP 27
- HTTP 154
- hub 6, 14, 73, 189
- hubs 5

## I

- I/O performance 7

IBM 3580 Tape Drive 53  
 IBM 3590 Tape Drive 52  
 IBM 3592 Tape Drive 51  
 IBM 7205 External SDLT Tape Drive Model 550 54  
 IBM 7206 External Tape Drive 55  
 IBM 7207 External Tape Drive 56  
 IBM 7208 Model 345 External 8mm Tape Drive 57  
 IBM Express portfolio 33  
 IBM Multi-Path Proxy driver 172  
 IBM Redundant Disk Array Controller 172  
 IBM storage products 32  
 IBM Subsystem Device Driver 172  
 IBM Tape autoloaders 46  
 IBM Tape Storage Systems 46  
 IBM TotalStorage 3580 53  
 IBM TotalStorage 3582 Tape Library 47  
 IBM TotalStorage 3583 Tape Library 48  
 IBM TotalStorage 3590 Tape Drive 52  
 IBM TotalStorage 3592 Tape Drive 51  
 IBM TotalStorage 7212 Storage Enclosure 49  
 IBM TotalStorage b-type family 167  
 IBM TotalStorage DS Family 32  
 IBM TotalStorage DS Storage Manager 163  
 IBM TotalStorage DS300 32  
 IBM TotalStorage DS400 33  
 IBM TotalStorage DS4000 35  
 IBM TotalStorage DS4100 34, 36  
 IBM TotalStorage DS4300 37  
 IBM TotalStorage DS4400 39  
 IBM TotalStorage DS4500 40  
 IBM TotalStorage DS6000 42  
 IBM TotalStorage DS8000 43  
 IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server 44  
 IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Specialist 164  
 IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape 3494 Library Specialist 164  
 IBM TotalStorage ETL Expert 165  
 IBM TotalStorage LTO Tape Library Specialist 164  
 IBM TotalStorage NAS Gateway 500 68  
 IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center 165  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN 16B-R multiprotocol router 151  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN Director M14 135  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch F32 128  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H08 123  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN Switch H16 126  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN12M-1 125  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN140M 138  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN16M-R multiprotocol SAN router 152  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN24M-1 130  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN256M 141  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN256N 145  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN32B-2 fabric switch 129  
 IBM TotalStorage SAN32M-1 131  
 IBM TotalStorage SANC40M 140  
 IBM TotalStorage Solution Center 126  
 IBM TotalStorage Switch L10 122  
 IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Server 58  
 IBM TotalStorage Virtualization family 126  
 ICAT 163  
 ICT 214  
 identification 177  
 IEEE 212, 215  
 IESG 184  
 IETF 211–212, 215  
 iFCP 10, 92, 118, 152, 196  
 Improved performance 19  
 Improved resource utilization 65  
 improvements 6  
 Improves 18  
 inappropriate 184  
 in-band 63  
 inband 158  
 in-band solution 64  
 INCITS 154, 212, 214  
 INCITS standard 154  
 industry associations 212  
 Information lifecycle management 5  
 information lifecycle management 198  
 Information Storage Industry Consortium 214  
 infrastructure 17  
 Infrastructure simplification 4  
 infrastructure simplification 198  
 initiator 9  
 INSIC 214  
 InSpeed 168  
 Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers 215  
 Integrates 18  
 Integration 26  
 integrity 18, 179  
 INTEL-based 32  
 intelligence 8, 62  
 intentionally 176  
 interactions 154  
 Interactive Configuration Agent Tool 163  
 Interational Committee for Information Technology

Standards 154  
interconnect elements 5  
intermixing 6  
International Committee for Information Technology Standards 214  
International Organization for Standardization 211  
international standardization 214  
Internet 9  
Internet Engineering Steering Group 184  
Internet Engineering Task Force 211, 215  
Internet Fibre Channel Protocol 10, 118, 152  
Internet SCSI 118  
Internet Small Computer System Interface 155  
interoperability 154, 211  
interoperability interfaces 211  
interoperability lab 20  
inter-switch link 123, 166  
inter-switch links 87  
inter-vendor interoperability 157  
Inventory 160  
inVSN 168  
IP 12, 14, 92, 133, 157  
    network terminology 17  
IP address 175  
IP Security 181  
IP security 184  
IP tunnelling 119  
IPSec 180, 184  
IPsec 181  
IPSec working 184  
IPv4 215  
iSCSI 9, 32, 92, 118, 133, 151, 155, 196, 215  
iSeries servers 30  
ISL 87, 89, 237  
ISL segmented 87  
ISL synchronization process 87  
islands 134  
islands of information 4, 25–26  
ISO 211  
Isolating the fabric 182

## **J**

JBOD 3  
JFS 27, 29  
JFS2 29  
Jini 212  
jitter 110  
JMAPI 166

Joint Technical Committee 1 214  
JTC 1 214

## **K**

K28.5 112  
key 179  
keys 178  
killer application 11

## **L**

L10 122  
L33 53  
LAN 3, 6, 9, 17, 166, 203  
LAN-less 203, 205  
latency 76, 88  
layers 13, 20  
level 61  
    storage 62  
levels  
    fabric 62  
Levels of storage virtualization 61  
liberates 17  
licensed internal code 172  
lifecycle management 18  
Linear Tape-Open 48  
LIP 192  
Load balancing 171  
load balancing 172, 195  
load-balancing 172  
locking 64, 175  
logical unit number 182–183  
logical volume management 61  
Logical Volume Managers 62  
login 117  
login protocols 15  
Long Wave Laser 86  
loop 14, 192  
loop identifier 117  
low cost 118  
LTO 47–48  
LUN 171, 182–183  
LUN assignment 155  
LUN mapping 213  
LUN masking 182  
LUN-masking 192  
LUNs 37  
LVM 62

## M

- mainframe 3, 8
- management xviii, 119, 158, 162, 166, 168
  - applications 166, 189
  - capability 73
  - centrally 7
  - consolidated storage 25
  - costs 1
  - end-to-end 73
  - levels 162
  - software 192
  - solutions 24, 166
- management architecture 162
- Management Information Base 159
- management information base 211
- management levels 162
- masking 155, 213
- MB 7
- Mb 7
- McDATA 122
- McDATA's 169
- MDS 9120 132
- MDS 9140 132
- media 214
- media types 23
- megabit 7
- megabyte 7
- merging fabrics 196
- message 15
- messaging 214
- meta-data controller 64
- MIB 157, 159, 211, 215
  - extensions 157
  - standard 157
- Mid-range disk systems 35, 44
- Midrange SAN switches 126
- mirroring 19, 23
- mixed-protocol 211
- MMF 85
- modal dispersion 110
- mode 85
- modular design 134
- modular system 93
- monitoring 155, 158
- MPP 172
- multipathing software 169
- multicast 14
- Multi-Mode Fiber 85
- Multi-Path Proxy 172

- multipathing 19
- multipathing software 171
- multi-platform 176
- multiple vendors 19
- multiprotocol router 197
- multiprotocol routers 150
- multi-vendor 211, 213
  - solutions 20

## N

- naming conventions 173
- nanometers 86
- NAS 9, 67, 155
- NAS Gateway 500 68
- National Institute of Standards and Technology 180
- National Security Agency 180
- national standard 179
- negative disparity 112
- NetBOIS 12
- Network Attached Storage 9
- network level 166
- network-attached storage 67
- neutral disparity 112, 117
- new methods 6
- NFS 9, 200
- NIST 180
- node-to-node 14
- noise 84
- non-IBM subsystems 192
- non-S/390 13, 16
- NSA 180
- NTFS 27

## O

- Object-based 30
- OEMI 28, 191
- on demand 26
- one-at-a-time 201
- open standards 154
- open systems 8
- operating systems 3
- optimizing performance 155
- Organizational Unique Identifier 216
- organizations 211
- oring 168
- OS/390 16, 25, 27–28, 31, 192, 198–200, 203
- OS/400 27, 31
- OUI 216

- outband 158
- outboard data movement 7, 203
- outboard data movement 204
- Out-of-band 159
- out-of-band 64
- out-of-band solution 64
- overlaid 176
- overview 121

## **P**

- packet priority 15
- pair of E\_Ports 87
- parallel interface 213
- Parallel Sysplex 195
- password 178
- passwords 185
- path failover 172
- paths 171
- Path-selection policies 172
- PC 9, 25, 27
- PCI 30
- PD/PSI 172
- Peripheral Component Interconnect 30
- persistent binding 183
- PGP 180
- physical 214
- physical addresses 31
- physical fabric 182
- physical media 14
- physically secure 185
- PKI 183
- plain text 178
- point-in-time 201
- point-to-point 14, 74–75
- policy-based allocation 67
- pooled 63
- pooling 23, 60, 191, 198
  - disk 31, 192
  - file 198
  - tape 31, 193
- port binding 183
- Port type controls 184
- port-based zoning 107
- positive disparity 112
- predominant architecture 12
- priority 117
- private 117
- private key 178

- Problem determination 172
- problem source identification 172
- protect 184
- protecting 177
- protects information 175
- protocol 8
- protocols 197
- provision volumes 213
- provisioning 155
- pSeries 29
- pSeries servers 29
- PtP 59
- public key 178
- Public Key Infrastructure 183
- public loop 117
- purchase decision 19

## **R**

- RADIUS 184
- RAID 3, 18, 23, 62
- RAID 1 8
- RDAC 172
- recovery 19
- Redbooks Web site 243
  - Contact us xx
- Reduces 18
- Reduction of downtime 65
- redundancy 23
- Redundant Disk Array Controller 172
- reference clock 109
- region of trust 183
- registry 161
- Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service 184
- remote copy 23, 31, 204
- remote mirroring 7, 19, 189
- remote sites 7
- replication 133
- responsible owner 173
- responsiveness 25
- return on investment 18
- revolution 12
- RFI 84
- rightsizing 17
- rival 211
- ROI 18
- roles 185
- router 6, 74, 189
- routers 5, 92, 150

routing service 198  
RS/6000 29  
running disparity 111

## S

S/390 16, 28, 191, 195  
S/FTP 180  
S/MIME 180  
SAN 133  
    fabric 189  
SAN File System 66  
SAN File System architecture 67  
SAN island consolidation 196  
SAN islands 176  
SAN management 153  
SAN network level 166  
SAN security 177  
SAN storage level 163  
SAN12M-1 125  
SAN16B-R 151  
SAN16M-R 152  
SAN24M 130  
SAN256M 141  
SAN32B-2 129  
SANmark 213  
SAS 215  
scalability 18  
scalable 126  
scratch groups 194  
SCSI 9, 12, 14, 23, 26, 29, 73–74, 118, 191, 195  
    differential 191  
    LVD 191  
    single-ended 191  
SCSI benefits 213  
SCSI commands 9  
SCSI Enclosure Services 160, 163  
SCSI Trade Association 212–213  
SCSI-1 23  
SCSI-3 160, 163, 203  
SDD 172  
secret code 178  
secret key 178  
secure access 26  
secure fabric 179  
Secure Hash Algorithm 180  
secure network 175  
Secure Remote Password Protocol 181  
Secure Shell 180, 184  
Secure Sockets Layer 180, 184  
Secure transactions 18  
securing data 177  
security 18, 23, 68, 133, 175, 213  
security applications 180  
security architecture 175  
security best practices 185  
security framework 175  
Security mechanisms 177  
security protocols 177  
security techniques 177  
segregating 182  
Serial Attached SCSI 214–215  
serial interface 8  
server connectivity 198  
server consolidation 16, 198  
server to server 6, 189  
server to storage 6, 189  
server-free 203–205  
Serverless 19  
Servers 189  
servers 23  
Service Location Protocol 160  
Service modules 92  
SES 158, 163  
SFTP 180  
SHA 180  
share 5  
share tape resources 193  
shared bus 76  
sharing 66  
Short Wave Laser 85  
Simple Network Management Protocol 184  
Simplex Connection 15  
simplification 12, 18  
Simplifies 18  
simultaneous  
    read access 201  
    read and write access 201  
Single level storage 31  
single storage device 20  
single-level storage 27, 30  
Single-Mode Fiber 85  
SLAP/FC-SW-3 183  
SLP 160  
SLS 31  
Small Computer System Interface 9, 118  
SMB customer 122  
SMB customers 126

- SMF 85
- SMI 154, 213
- SMI interface 154
- SMI-S 154–155, 213
- SMS 67
- SNA 12
- SNIA 11, 19–20, 154, 211–212
- sniffers. Through 180
- SNMP 157, 166, 184
  - agent 157
  - manager 157
- socket 10
- Software 189
- SONET 168
- source 181
- SPD 30
- spoofing 179, 181
- SRP 181
- SSA 23, 29
- SSA interconnection 29
- SSH 180, 184
- SSL 180, 184
- STA 212–213
- standards 19–20, 166, 211
- Standards based management initiatives 154
- storage 23
  - consolidation 19, 25–26, 198
  - partitioning 198
  - server-attached 8
  - sharing 19
- storage capacity 23
- storage level 62
- Storage Management Initiative 154, 213
- Storage Management Initiative Specification 213
- Storage Management Interface Specification 154
- Storage Manager 37
- Storage Network Industry Association 11
- Storage Networking Industry Association 154, 211–212
- storage performance 23
- storage strategy 21
- storage to storage 7, 189
- storage tunneling 10, 118
- storage virtualization 20
- striping 199
- subnet 175
- Subsystem Device Driver 172
- SUN 27, 199–200, 203
- superseded 172

- support 20
- supported attachments 147
- SVC 65
- SVC architecture 66
- switch 6, 14, 73–74, 166, 189, 192
- switch authentication 179
- switch cascading 87
- Switch Link Authentication Protocol 183
- switch maximum
  - 7 hops allowed 87
- switched 14
- switched fabric 77
- switches 5
- symbolic names 108
- Symmetric 63, 178
- symmetric 180
- symmetric encryption 178
- Synchronous 19
- system performance 64
- system-managed storage 67
- Systems Product Division 30

## T

- T-0 copy 204
- T11 182
- tape libraries 6
- tape sharing 31
- target 9
- task switching 31
- TCO 17, 67
- TCP socket 118
- TCP/IP 118
- Technology Advisory Group 214
- Technology Independent Machine Interface 30
- terabytes 31
- third party copy 203
- tightly couple 8
- TIMI 30
- Tivoli Common Agent Services 161
- TLS 180, 184
- Token Ring 74
- toolbox 188
- tools 173
- topology 214
- total cost of ownership 17
- TPF 28
- traditional 5
- transfer 7

translation of data 178  
transmission rates 14  
transport 214  
Transport Layer Security 184  
transport service 14  
traps 173  
trends 17  
Triple DES 179  
troubleshooting 172  
true data sharing 198, 200  
trunking 123  
trust 183  
trusted areas 184  
trusted IP address 175  
TSSC 126  
tunneling 10

## U

Ultranet Replication Appliance 149  
Unacknowledged Connectionless 15  
unifying management 153  
unique key 180  
unit of measure 7  
universal access to data 24  
UNIX 9, 16, 25, 27, 29, 31, 192, 198  
unsecured networks 185  
URA 149  
utility 5

## V

vaulting 7  
virtual addresses 31  
virtual drives 62  
virtual fabric 182  
Virtual resource 18  
Virtual SAN 132, 182  
Virtualization 25  
virtualization 20, 23, 60, 62  
virtualization aggregation 67  
Virtualization models 63  
virtualization techniques 60  
VM 28  
volume grouping 199  
VSAM 27  
VSAN 132, 182  
VSE 28  
VTS 58  
VTS Peer-to-Peer 59

## W

WAN 3, 6, 17, 133, 166, 195, 203  
WBEM 154, 216  
weakest 175  
wide area network 133  
Windows NT 16, 25, 27, 31, 192, 198–200, 203  
worldwide service 122  
WORM 52  
Write Once, Read Many 52  
WWNs 179

## X

XML 154  
xmlCIM 154  
xSeries servers 31

## Z

Zoning 182  
zoning 155, 160, 192  
zoning configurations 182  
zSeries 28  
zSeries servers 28





**Redbooks**

## **Introduction to Storage Area Networks**







**Redbooks**

# Introduction to Storage Area Networks

## Learn basic SAN terminology and component uses

## Introduce yourself to the benefits a SAN can bring

## Discover the IBM TotalStorage SAN portfolio

The explosion of data created by the businesses of today is making storage a strategic investment priority for companies of all sizes. As storage takes precedence, three major initiatives have emerged:

- ▶ Infrastructure simplification: Consolidation, virtualization, and automated management with IBM TotalStorage can help simplify the infrastructure and ensure an organization meets its business goals.
- ▶ Information lifecycle management: Managing business data through its life cycle from conception until disposal in a manner that optimizes storage and access at the lowest cost.
- ▶ Business continuity: Maintaining access to data at all times, protecting critical business assets, and aligning recovery costs based on business risk and information value.

Storage is no longer an afterthought. Too much is at stake. Companies are searching for more ways to efficiently manage expanding volumes of data, and how to make that data accessible throughout the enterprise; this is propelling the move of storage into the network. Also, the increasing complexity of managing large numbers of storage devices and vast amounts of data is driving greater business value into software and services.

With current estimates of data to be managed and made available increasing at 60 percent per annum, this is where a storage area network (SAN) enters the arena. Simply put, SANs are the leading storage infrastructure for the global economy of today. SANs offer simplified storage management, scalability, flexibility, availability, and improved data access, movement, and backup.

This IBM Redbook gives an introduction to the SAN. It illustrates where SANs are today, who are the main industry organizations and standard bodies active in the SAN world, and it positions IBM's comprehensive, best-of-breed approach of enabling SANs with its products and services. It introduces some of the most commonly encountered terminology and features present in a SAN.

## INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL SUPPORT ORGANIZATION

## BUILDING TECHNICAL INFORMATION BASED ON PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

**For more information:**  
[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)